The Catholic University Classical Series

A First Latin Book

DO NOT REMOVE FROM COLLECTION
PRIOR TO 2032
SHARED PRINT RETAINED ITEM

Reference Library

of the

College of the Holy Names

Oakland - - Californi

HOLY NAMES UNIVERSITY

PAUL J. CUSHING LIBRARY
library.hnu.edu

34681000738366

The Catholic University Classical Series

Edited by ROY J. DEFERRARI, M.A., Ph.D.

Photograph by permission of A. S. Cooley

ARCH OF TITUS AND TEMPLE OF VENUS AND ROME FROM COLOSSEUM.

COLLEGE OF THE HOLY NAMES
OAKLAND, CALIFORNIA

A FIRST LATIN BOOK FOR CATHOLIC SCHOOLS

By

ROY JOSEPH DEFERRARI, M.A., Ph.D.

Associate Professor of Greek and Latin at The Catholic University of America

WASHINGTON, D. C.
THE CATHOLIC EDUCATION PRESS
1926

COLLEGE OF THE HOLY NAME
OAKLAND, CALIFORNIA

PA
2087
D45

Copyright 1921
by the
CATHOLIC EDUCATION PRESS

Fourth Impression, 1929

14080

National Capital Press
book makers

PREFACE

In preparing the present book, the author has endeavored primarily to present all the essentials of Latin grammar in the simplest possible way.

By far the majority of first year Latin books completely ignore the order of subjects as treated in the Latin grammar and mingle the study of forms with the study of syntax. The reason for this, it is said, is to lend variety, and thereby an added interest to the work of the first year. In very recent years, too, beginners' Latin books have had a tendency to load their pages with an excess of material regarding the relationship between Latin and English. This, too, is done in the hope of increasing the interest of beginners in their early study of the language.

The purpose of all these innovations is worthy, indeed, but the real purpose of the beginners' book seems to have been forgotten. The first Latin book should aim to give the student a complete mastery of the forms and of the essentials of syntax, all within the compass of a year's work, in order that in the second year he may study intelligently such Latin as Caesar's "Gallic War," and may at the same time make a more detailed study of the Grammar. This is no easy task for a single year's work, and accordingly the utmost economy should be exercised in selecting the material for study, and the greatest care should be applied to procure the most effective arrangement of this material.

Thus only matters of the greatest importance have been presented here. At the same time we feel sure nothing really essential has been omitted. Since the Latin usually read in the second year is Caesar's "Gallic War," the vocabulary has been made up largely of the words most commonly found therein.

The reading of continuous prose should be started as early as possible, probably at Lesson 30. For this purpose, easy Latin selections with full notes will be found at the back of the book. These bits of prose have been taken from Nepos's "Lives" and Caesar's "Gallic War." Some prayers and hymns of the Church have also been included in this section. These may be read and translated very early in the year's work, and may be memorized very profitably, at least in part.

Since a large portion of the second year's work is a systematic study of the Grammar, the present volume has followed the order of the standard grammars, thereby familiarizing the student at once with the most important tool for his Latin studies. In this way the student will not have to adapt himself to a new system of Latin grammar study so soon after his struggle with the arrangement presented in the first Latin book.

Indeed, as he becomes familiar with the first year book, he at the same time learns the order and arrangement of the Grammar. The orderly arrangement of the Grammar has an intrinsic value in itself, the loss of which has never been counterbalanced by any new arrangement intended to lend increased interest. In the present book, just as in the grammars, the forms to be memorized are presented first, followed by the essentials of the syntax.

The student must have a thorough mastery of the forms before he can study and apply the rules of syntax intelligently. It is then much better to concentrate on this work of pure memory first, even to the distaste of the student, as the interest in the study of Latin will be greatly increased later when he realizes his proficiency in the elements of the language and sees his success in the actual application of these fundamentals.

Since this book has been prepared primarily for Catholic schools, it contains, besides Latin prayers and hymns, the principles of the Italian as well as the "Roman" pronunciation of Latin. It is not our purpose to discuss the merits of these two systems. The so-called "Roman" pronunciation is undoubtedly the nearest approximation to Latin as it was spoken in the classical period of antiquity. The Italian pronunciation has been advocated strongly by the Pope, in an effort to procure some uniformity in the spoken Latin of ecclesiastical gatherings. The various other methods of speaking this ancient tongue, known variously as "Continental," "Modern," etc., have nothing whatever to recommend them except, perhaps, their facility. They consist for the most part of the application of the principles for pronouncing one's own native tongue, whatever it may be, to the speaking of Latin.

Finally we wish to express our sincere gratitude to the Rev. Romain Butin, S.M., Ph.D., of the Catholic University of America, not only for many valuable suggestions, but also for his great interest and practical assistance in preparing the manuscript for the press. Thanks are due also to Rev. T. J. McGourty, Ph.D., and Rev. F. J. Cōln, Ph.D., both of the Catholic University of America, for having read the manuscript and for making noteworthy suggestions.

ROY J. DEFERRARI.

Brookland, D. C.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

Page

Alphabet.—Sounds.—Roman Method of Pronunciation.—Syllables.—Quantity.—Accent.—Inflections.—Gender.—Italian Pronunciation.....11–14

Part I.—INFLECTIONS

Lesson

1. First Declension..... 19
2. First Declension (continued).—Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation.—Rules of Syntax..... 20
3. Second Declension..... 22
4. Second Declension (continued)..... 24
5. Second Declension (continued).—Present Indicative of the Verb *sum*.—Rules of Syntax..... 25
6. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.—Rules of Syntax. 27
7. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension (continued)..... 28
8. Third Declension.—Mute Stems..... 30
9. Third Declension (continued).—Liquid Stems.—Rule of Syntax. 32
10. Third Declension (continued).—Liquid Stems.—Rules of Syntax.—Nasal Stems..... 34
11. Third Declension (continued).—I-Stems.—Rules of Syntax.... 37
12. Third Declension (continued).—Mixed Stems..... 39
13. Gender in the Third Declension.—Rules of Syntax..... 40
14. Fourth Declension..... 41
15. Fifth Declension..... 43
16. Nine Irregular Adjectives..... 44
17. Adjectives of the Third Declension..... 46
18. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued)..... 48
19. Comparison of Adjectives.—Rule of Syntax..... 52
20. Comparison of Adjectives..... 53
21. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs..... 55
22. Numerals..... 57
23. Numerals (continued)..... 58
24. Declension of Numeral Adjectives..... 59
25. Personal Pronouns..... 61
26. Reflexive and Possessive Pronouns..... 62
27. Demonstrative Pronouns..... 64

Lesson		Page
28.	Demonstrative Pronouns (continued)	65
29.	The Intensive Pronoun.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.—Rules of Syntax	66
30.	Indefinite Pronouns	69
31.	Conjugation.—The Four Conjugations.—The Principal Parts of a Verb.—Conjugation of *sum*	70
32.	Conjugation of *sum* (continued)	73
33.	Indicative Active of *amō*	75
34.	Subjunctive Active of *amō*	77
35.	Active of *amō* (continued)	79
36.	Indicative Passive of *amō*	80
37.	Passive Voice of *amō* (continued).—Rule of Syntax	82
38.	Indicative Active of *moneō*	84
39.	Active Voice of *moneō* (continued)	86
40.	Indicative Passive of *moneō*	88
41.	Passive Voice of *moneō* (continued)	90
42.	Active Voice of *regō*	92
43.	Passive Voice of *regō*	94
44.	Passive Voice of *regō* (continued)	96
45.	Active Voice of *audiō*	98
46.	Passive Voice of *audiō*	100
47.	Verbs in *-iō* of the Third Conjugation	103
48.	Verbs in *-iō* of the Third Conjugation (continued)	105
49.	Deponent Verbs	107
50.	Periphrastic Conjugations.—Rule of Syntax	110
51.	Irregular Verbs: *possum*	111
52.	Irregular Verbs (continued): *dō*	113
53.	Irregular Verbs (continued): *ferō*	115
54.	Irregular Verbs (continued): *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*	118
55.	Irregular Verbs (continued): *fīō*	119
56.	Irregular Verbs (continued): *eō*.—Interrogative Sentences	121
57.	Defective Verbs	123
58.	Impersonal Verbs	125

Part II.—SYNTAX

59.	The Nominative and Vocative Cases	129
60.	The Genitive Case	131
61.	The Genitive Case (continued)	133
62.	The Dative Case	135
63.	The Dative Case (continued)	136

Lesson Page
64. The Accusative Case ... 138
65. The Accusative Case (continued) ... 139
66. The Ablative Case ... 141
67. The Ablative Case (continued) ... 143
68. The Ablative Case (continued) ... 145
69. The Ablative Case (continued) ... 147
70. Syntax of Adjectives ... 149
71. Syntax of Pronouns ... 151
72. The Subjunctive Mood in Independent Sentences.—Hortatory Subjunctive.—Deliberative Subjunctive ... 152
73. The Subjunctive Mood in Independent Sentences (continued).—Optative Subjunctive.—Potential Subjunctive ... 154
74. Commands.—Affirmative.—Negative ... 155
75. Tenses of the Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses.—Sequence of Tenses ... 156
76. Clauses of Purpose.—Relative Clauses of Characteristic.—Causal Clauses ... 158
77. Clauses of Result.—Concessive Clauses ... 160
78. Temporal Clauses ... 162
79. Temporal Clauses (continued) ... 163
80. Substantive Clauses ... 165
81. Substantive Clauses (continued) ... 166
82. Indirect Questions ... 168
83. Conditional Sentences ... 169
84. Indirect Discourse.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse ... 171
85. The Infinitive ... 173
86. Participles ... 174
87. Gerund and Gerundive.—Principal Rules of Syntax ... 176

Part III.—LATIN FOR TRANSLATION

Latin Prayers: The Sign of the Cross.—The Lord's Prayer.—The Angelical Salutation.—The Apostles' Creed.—Glōria Patrī.—The Confiteor.—Salvē Rēgīna.—Memorāre.—Orēmus ... 187
Latin Hymns: Tantum Ergo.—Dē Nātīvitāte Dōminī.—Dē Resurrectiōne Dominī.—In Passiōne Dominī.—Dē Cruce Dominī.—Dē Novissimō Iūdiciō ... 188
Selections from Nepos: Hannibal.—His greatness as a general, and his hatred of Romans.—Hannibal's vow.—Hannibal's campaign in Spain, and his march over the Alps.—The victories in Italy.—

Page

He outwits Fabius and defeats the Roman generals.—Hannibal, after retiring from Italy, is defeated by Scipio at Lama.—Hannibal at home. His flight to Antiochus.—He arouses Antiochus to war against the Romans.—He goes to Crete, and there saves his money by a trick.—Hannibal goes to Prusias. His bit of stratagem.—By his strategy he defeats Eumenes.—His death by poison.—His historians and his own writings..... 192

Julius Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book III, selections: Caesar sends Galba against the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni. Galba establishes winter quarters at Octodurus.—Mountain tribes revolt and occupy the neighboring heights.—The Romans meet in council and determine to defend their position.—The Romans are attacked by a larger force.—After fighting for six hours, Galba decides upon a sally.—The Gauls are completely routed.—Galba goes into winter quarters..... 205

General Latin–English Vocabulary..... 211

English–Latin Vocabulary..... 246

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	=*ablative.*	inf.	=*infinitive.*
acc.	=*accusative.*	interrog.	=*interrogative*
adj.	=*adjective.*	intr.	=*intransitive*
adv.	=*adverb, adverbial.*	lit.	=*literally.*
c.	=*common (gender).*	m., masc.	=*masculine.*
comp.	=*comparative.*	n., neut.	=*neuter.*
conj.	=*conjunction.*	nom.	=*nominative.*
dat.	=*dative.*	p., pp.	=*page, pages.*
decl.	=*declension.*	pass.	=*passive.*
dep.	=*deponent.*	pl., plu.	=*plural.*
e.g.	=*exempli gratia=for example.*	prep.	=*preposition.*
		pres.	=*present.*
etc.	=*et cetera=and so forth*	pron.	=*pronoun.*
f.	=*feminine.*	rel.	=*relative.*
gen.	=*genitive.*	sc.	=*supply.*
i.e.	=*id est=that is.*	sing.	=*singular.*
impers.	=*impersonal, impersonally.*	sup. super.	=*superlative.*
indecl.	=*indeclinable.*	tr., trans.	=*transitive.*
indic.	=*indicative.*	w.	=*with.*

INTRODUCTION

1. This introduction should first of all be read carefully by the pupil, and then used for reference.

Alphabet

2. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that the Latin has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Consonantal *i* is printed in some books as *j*.

Classification of Sounds

3. The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u.** The other letters are consonants. The diphthongs are combinations of two vowels pronounced as one. They are **ae, oe, au, eu, ui.**

4. Roman Method of Pronunciation

(a) **Vowels,** when long, are pronounced as follows: **ā** like *a* in *father;* **ē** like *e* in *prey;* **ī** like *i* in *machine;* **ō** like *o* in *note;* **ū** like *u* in *rude.*

(b) **Vowels,** when short, are pronounced as follows: **ă** like *a* in *along;* **ĕ** like *e* in *step;* **ĭ** like *i* in *pit;* **ŏ** like *o* in *or;* **ŭ** like *u* in *put.*

(c) **Diphthongs,** being combinations of two vowels, are pronounced as two vowels in quick succession. Thus: **ae** like *ai* in *aisle;* **oe** like *oi* in *coin;* **au** like *ou* in *out;* **eu** like **ĕ-o͝o; ui** like **o͝o-ĭ.**

(d) **Consonants** are for the most part pronounced as in English, but the few exceptions should be noted carefully:

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu, r, x, z are pronounced as in English, but **bs** and **bt** are pronounced as *ps* and *pt.*

c and **g** are always hard as in *come* and *go.*

i as a consonant is like *y* in *yes.*

t is always hard as in *tin,* and never as the sound of *sh* as in English *mention.*

s is always a hissing sound as in *sin,* and never like *z* as in *ease.*

v is always like *w.*

ph, ch, and **th** are to be pronounced practically like English *p, k,* and *t.*

Doubled consonants such as **ll, mm, tt,** etc., are not pronounced as in English like single consonants, but an effort should be made to pronounce both members of the combination distinctly.

Syllables

5. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong either alone or with one or more consonants. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: **con-ci-pi-ō,** *I perceive.*

In dividing the word into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels belongs with the following vowel: **pa′-ter,** *father.*

Where there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced with it: **ho′-spes,** *guest;* **mōn-strum,** *omen.*

Compound words are separated into their component parts: **ad-est (ad,** *near;* **est,** *he is*), *he is present.*

Double consonants are separated: **pu-el′-la,** *girl.*

The last syllable of a word is called the ultima; the syllable before the last is the penult; and the one before that is the antepenult.

Quantity of Vowels

6. Vowels are long (¯) or short (˘), according to the length of time used in pronouncing them. Thus in English, the ī of *machine* takes more time than the ĭ of *pin.* In this book, the long vowels are marked by a horizontal line above them; short vowels are left unmarked.

No definite rules can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. One must become familiar with them by observing and learning the quantity as marked in every part of the book.

A few general rules, however, for determining the quantity of vowels are of great assistance:

1. A vowel is long before **nf, ns,** as **īnferō,** *I bring in;* **īnsānus,** *mad.*

2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long, as **cō′-gō (coăgō),** *I collect.*

3. Diphthongs are always long, and so need not be marked, as **cāusa,** *cause.*

4. A vowel is usually short before **nt, nd,** as **amant,** *they love;* **amandus,** *to be loved.*

5. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h,** as **cŏ′-pĭ-a,** *abundance;* **tra′-ho,** *I drag.*

Quantity of Syllables

7. A syllable is long or short according to the length of time consumed in pronouncing it.

A syllable is long or takes a long time in pronunciation when it contains a long vowel or diphthong, as **lēgēs,** *laws;* **aedēs,** *temple.* Such syllables are said to be long by nature.

A syllable is long when it contains a short vowel followed by **x, z,** or any two consonants, except a mute[1] followed by **l** or **r,** as **dux,** *leader;* **sacerdōs,** *priest.* Such syllables are said to be long by position.

---

[1] The mutes are **p, b, t, d, c, k, g, q.**

A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel, by a single consonant, or by a mute with **l** or **r**, as **honor,** *honor;* **hiems,** *winter;* **patria,** *native land.*

Accent

8. In words of two syllables the first receives the stress of the voice or accent, as **te'git,** *it covers;* **te'm plum,** *temple.*

Words of more than two syllables receive the accent on the penult (next to the last) when it is long, otherwise on the antepenult (second before the last), as **amā're,** *to love;* **mi't tere,** *to send.*

EXERCISE

9. Divide the following into syllables. Accent and pronounce carefully, remembering to sound long vowels long, and short vowels short.

The Lord's Prayer

Pater noster, quī es in caelīs, sānctificētur nōmen tuum. Adveniat rēgnum tuum; fiat voluntās tua sicut in caelō et in terrā. Pānem nostrum quotīdiānum dā nōbīs hodiē. Et dimitte nōbīs dēbita nostra, sīcut et nōs dimittimus dēbitōribus nostrīs. Et nē nōs indūcās in tentātiōnem, sed līberā nōs ā malō. Āmēn.

Inflections

10. The Parts of Speech in Latin are the same as in English, except that the Latin has no article: thus, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.

11. Inflection is the change words undergo in form to show change in meaning. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called declension; with verbs, conjugation. Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections have no inflection.

12. Declension.—Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases:

Nominative, the case of the subject.

Genitive, like English possessive, or objective case with *of.*

Dative, like English objective with *to* or *for.*

Accusative, the case of the direct object.

Vocative, the case of direct address.

Ablative, like English objective with *by, from, with, in.*

Locative.—The traces of another case, the locative, denoting place where, occur in names of towns, and a few other words.

13. Conjugation.—Latin verbs have:

1. Three finite moods: Indicative, subjunctive, imperative; besides infinitives, participles, supines, gerunds, and gerundives.

2. Six tenses: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, future perfect.

3. Two voices: Active and passive, as in English.

4. Three persons: First, second, and third, as in English.

5. Two numbers: Singular and plural, as in English.

Gender

14. Latin, just as English, has three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter.

Gender is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning of the noun, but more frequently by the ending.

15. General rules of gender by meaning.

1. Names of males, and of rivers, winds, months, and mountains are masculine, as: **pater,** *father;* **Tiberis,** *the Tiber;* **auster,** *south wind;* **Iānuārius,** *January;* **Apennīnus,** *Apennines.*

2. Names of females, and of countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine, as **fīlia,** *daughter;* **Ītalia,** *Italy;* **Rōma,** *Rome;* **Dēlos,** *Delos;* **ulmus,** *elm.*

3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter, as **nihil,** *nothing.*

4. The principles for gender by ending will be given later under the different declensions.

16. Italian Pronunciation of Latin.

For those teachers who prefer to teach the Italian pronunciation of Latin, the following general rules may be of assistance:

(a) In general, vowels in Italian are pronounced as in the Roman pronunciation of Latin.

(b) Diphthongs in Italian are also pronounced as in the Roman pronunciation of Latin, except **ae,** which rarely occurs in Italian. When the diphthong **ae** does appear, it is pronounced as Latin **e,** that is, like **e** in *prey.*

(c) Of the consonants, the following are to be noted as being different from their regular pronunciation in English.

c, soft before **e** and **i,** like **ch** in *charity.*

g, soft before **e** and **i,** like **j** in *just.*

h, is always silent.

r, as in English, except that it is rolled more.

s, as in English, except that between two vowels it sounds like **z** in dozen.

z, usually like English **ts** in *fits*.

cc, before **e** or **i**, like **tch** in *match*.

ch, before **e** or **i**, always hard, like **k**.

gg, before **e** or **i**, sounds like **dj** in *adjust*.

gh, before **e** or **i**, is hard, like **g** in *game*.

gl, before **i**, like **ll** in *million*.

gn, like **n** in *onion*.

sc, soft before **e** or **i**, like **sh** in *she*.

Double consonants are always pronounced as two separate consonants; i. e., with double emphasis.

PART I.—INFLECTIONS

Lesson 1

FIRST DECLENSION

17. There are five declensions of nouns, distinguished by the final letter of the stem. It is customary, however, to indicate the declension from the ending of the genitive singular.

Declension	Stem-ending	Gen. Sing. ending
I	**-ā-**	**-ae**
II	**-o-**	**-ī**
III	**-i-** or a consonant	**-is**
IV	**-u-**	**-ūs**
V	**-ē-**	**-ēī**

FIRST DECLENSION (-ā-) STEMS

mensa, f., *table*

18.

		Singular	Case-endings
Nom.	**mēnsa**	*a* (or *the*) *table*	**-a**
Gen.	**mēnsae**	*a table's, of a table*	**-ae**
Dat.	**mēnsae**	*to* or *for a table*	**-ae**
Acc.	**mēnsam**	*a table*	**-am**
Abl.	**mēnsā**	*from, with, by,* or *on a table*	**-ā**
		Plural	
Nom.	**mēnsae**	*tables,* or *the tables*	**-ae**
Gen.	**mēnsārum**	*tables', of tables*	**-ārum**
Dat.	**mēnsīs**	*to* or *for tables*	**-īs**
Acc.	**mēnsās**	*tables*	**-ās**
Abl.	**mēnsīs**	*from, with, by tables*	**-īs**

19. The base or that part of the word which remains unchanged in inflection is found by dropping the termination **-ae** of the genitive singular, as **mēnsae**, base, **mēns-**.

20. The vocative case in all declensions is like the nominative, except in certain nouns of the second declension.

21. Latin has no article. Thus **mēnsa** may mean *table, a table,* or *the table;* and in the plural **mēnsae**, *tables* or *the tables.*

22. Town names and a few common nouns have a locative case in **-ae**: as, **Rōmae**, *at Rome;* **mīlitiae**, *in service.*

23. Most nouns of the first declension are feminine. Names of males, however, are masculine: as, **agricola,** *farmer;* **nauta,** *sailor;* **poeta,** *poet.*

24. **VOCABULARY**

agricola, ae, m., *farmer.*
dea, ae, f., *goddess* (abl. and dat. plu. **deabus**)
fābula, ae, f., *story.*
fīlia, ae, f., *daughter* (abl. and dat. plu. **fīliābus**).
incola, ae, m., *inhabitant.*
īnsula, ae, f., *island.*
lūna, ae, f., *moon.*
nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*
porta, ae, f., *gate.*
puella, ae, f., *girl.*
rēgīna, ae, f., *queen.*

25. **EXERCISES**

1. Agricola, fābulae, lūna. 2. Fīliae, incolārum, īnsulīs. 3. Nautae, portīs, puellās. 4. Rēgīnam, fābulās, agricolārum. 5. Īnsula, lūnīs, portās. 6. Puella, rēgīnārum, incolae. 7. Agricolās, nautārum, nautās. 8. Fīlia, fīliārum, fīliīs. 9. Portīs, portam, portae. 10. Puella, fābulā rēgīnae.

26. 1. To the queen, the stories (as subject), from the moon. 2. To the farmer, for the sailors, of the inhabitants. 3. The girls (as direct object), of the story, to the inhabitants. 4. The gate (as subject), by the gates, of the queens. 5. The daughters of the sailor, the inhabitants of the islands. 6. To the girls of the island. 7. With the story of the farmer. 8. From the sailors of the island.

Lesson 2

FIRST DECLENSION (-ā-) STEMS, Continued

27. **Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation.**

Singular	Plural
amō, *I love, am loving, do love.*	**amāmus,** *we love.*
amās, *thou lovest, you love,* etc.	**amātis,** *you love.*
amat, *he, she, it loves.*	**amant,** *they love.*

All verbs of the first conjugation are inflected like **amō.**

Remember that in Latin the subject of the verb if it is a personal pronoun (I, thou, he, we, etc.) is not expressed unless emphatic. It is implied in the verb.

28. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. The subject of the verb is always in the nominative case.
2. The verb agrees with the subject in number and person. **fīliae amant,** *daughters love.*
3. The object of the verb is in the accusative case. **poēta amat fīliam,** *the poet loves his daughter.*
4. A noun used with another noun to complete or limit its meaning is put in the genitive case.
   fīliae agricolae, *the daughters of the farmer,* or *the farmer's daughters.*

29. VOCABULARY

est, *he, she,* or *it is.*
et, conj., *and;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*
laudō, *I praise.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
rōsa, ae, *f., rose.*
sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*
silva, ae, f., *forest.*
stella, ae, f., *star.*
sunt, *they are.*
terra, ae, f., *land, country.*
ubi, adv., *where, when.*
vāstō, *I lay waste.*
via, ae, f., *road, street.*
vocō, *I call, I summon.*

N.B.—It is very important for the student to remember from the outset that the order of words in a Latin sentence is free. Although it may be stated that usually the subject and object (if they exist) of a Latin sentence come first and the verb last, this is by no means always so. Therefore it is very necessary that the student analyze strictly every sentence which he translates. That is, he should understand exactly the relation of one word to another.

EXERCISES

30. 1. Terram agricolae vāstant. 2. Incolae nautās vocant. 3. Et stellās et lūnam amāmus. 4. Rōsās laudās. 5. Silvam laudātis. 6. Viās silvae puella laudat. 7. Sagittās nōn amō. 8. Ubi est[1] rēgīna

[1] **est,** third sing. ind. of **sum.** Translate *is.*

insulae? 9. Incolae terram vāstant. 10. Fīliae nautae silvam laudant. 11. Agricolās et nautās vocātis. 12. Sagittās agricolae laudās. 13. Silvam laudās. 14. Silvās agricolae vāstant.

31. 1. We love the moon and the stars. 2. We praise the farmer's daughter. 3. They lay waste the forests of the country. 4. He summons both the farmers and the sailors. 5. The inhabitants of the island are calling. 6. The farmer does not like roses. 7. Where is the star?

Lesson 3

SECOND DECLENSION (-o-): STEMS

32. Stems in **-o-** with the nominative in **-us** or **-um.**

amīcus, m., *friend.*

	Singular		Case-endings
Nom.	**amīcus**	*a* (or *the*) *friend*	**-us**
Gen.	**amīcī**	*a friend's, of a friend*	**-ī**
Dat.	**amīcō**	*to* or *for a friend*	**-ō**
Acc.	**amīcum**	*a friend*	**-um**
Abl.	**amīcō**	*from, with, by a friend*	**-ō**
	Plural		
Nom.	**amīcī**	*friends*, or *the friends*	**-ī**
Gen.	**amīcōrum**	*friends', of friends*	**-ōrum**
Dat.	**amīcīs**	*to* or *for friends*	**-īs**
Acc.	**amīcōs**	*friends*	**-ōs**
Abl.	**amīcīs**	*from, with, by friends*	**-īs**

bellum, n., *war*

Singular		Case-endings	Plural		Case-endings
Nom.	**bellum**	**-um**	*Nom.*	**bella**	**-a**
Gen.	**bellī**	**-ī**	*Gen.*	**bellōrum**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	**bellō**	**-ō**	*Dat.*	**bellīs**	**-īs**
Acc.	**bellum**	**-um**	*Acc.*	**bella**	**-a**
Abl.	**bellō**	**-ō**	*Abl.*	**bellīs**	**-īs**

Stems in **-o-** with the nominative in **-us** have a special form for the vocative case, thus, **amīcĕ, Marcĕ.**

33. VOCABULARY

accūsō, *I accuse.*
amīca, ae, f., *friend.*
amīcus, ī, m., *friend.*
animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, courage.*
aquila, ae, f., *eagle.*
avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*
auxilium, ī (**iī**), n., *aid, help.*
Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *Belgians, a tribe of Gaul.*
bellum, ī, n., *war.*
equus, ī, m., *horse.*
Gallī, ōrum, m. pl., *Gauls.*
Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *Germans.*
implōrō, *I entreat.*
Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*
proelium, ī (**iī**), n., *battle.*
vexō, *I harass, annoy.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

EXERCISES

34. 1. Equō, equum, equīs. 2. Bellum, bellō, bellī. 3. Amīcī, amīcōs, amīcōrum. 4. Animum, animī, animīs. 5. Proelia, proeliīs, proeliōrum. 6. Auxilia, auxiliō, amīce. 7. Belgae Germānōs accūsant. 8. Belgae et Gallī auxilium implōrant. 9. Aquila et equus. 10. Avus equum amīcī amat. 11. Bella et proelia nōn amāmus. 12. Amīcōs amātis. 13. Nautae equōs agricolārum vexant. 14. Silvās terrārum et insulārum aquilae amant. 15. Amīcos accūsant et bellum amant.

35. 1. To a friend; of friends; friends. 2. By war; by battles; for a help. 3. Both the Belgians and the Gauls accuse the Germans. 4. They lay waste the land and villages. 5. They entreat the aid of the Gauls. 6. Grandfather likes the farmer's horses. 7. The queen does not like battles and wars.

Lesson 4

SECOND DECLENSION (-o-) STEMS, Continued

36. Stems in **-o-** with the nominative in **-er** or **-ir**.

	puer, m., *boy.* stem, **puero-.**	**ager**, m., *field.* stem, **agro-.**	
	Singular		Case-endings
Nom.	**puer**	**ager**	wanting
Gen.	**puerī**	**agrī**	**-ī**
Dat.	**puerō**	**agrō**	**-ō**
Acc.	**puerum**	**agrum**	**-um**
Abl.	**puerō**	**agrō**	**-ō**
	Plural		
Nom.	**puerī**	**agrī**	**-ī**
Gen.	**puerōrum**	**agrōrum**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	**puerīs**	**agrīs**	**-īs**
Acc.	**puerōs**	**agrōs**	**-ōs**
Abl.	**puerīs**	**agrīs**	**-īs**

vir, m., *man.*
stem, **viro-.**

Singular		Case-endings	Plural		Case-endings
Nom.	**vir**	wanting	*Nom.*	**virī**	**-ī**
Gen.	**virī**	**-ī**	*Gen.*	**virōrum**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	**virō**	**-ō**	*Dat.*	**virīs**	**-īs**
Acc.	**virum**	**-um**	*Acc.*	**virōs**	**-ōs**
Abl.	**virō**	**-ō**	*Abl.*	**virīs**	**-īs**

Stems in **-o-** with the nominative in **-er** or **-ir** have no special vocative form. The vocative is the same as the nominative.

37. VOCABULARY

audācia, ae, f., *boldness.*
castra, orum, n. pl., *a camp.*
cōpia, ae, f., *abundance, plenty;* in plur. *troops, forces.*
dōnum, i, n., *gift.*
Eurōpa, ae, f., *Europe.*
filius, ī (iī), m., *son.*
Galba, ae, m., *Galba* (a man's name).

Graecī, ōrum, m., pl., *Greeks.*
incitō, *I incite, urge on.*
oppidum, ī, n., *town.*
oppugnō, *I attack, assault.*
perīculum, ī, n., *danger.*

EXERCISES

38. 1. Audāciam Galbae laudat. 2. Gallī puerōs incitant. 3. Italia terra Eurōpae est. 4. Cōpiae Graecōrum oppidum oppugnant. 5. Galba perīcula amat. 6. Puerī virōs implōrant. 7. Perīcula castrōrum nōn amātis. 8. Dōna Graecōrum nōn amō. 9. Eurōpa cōpiās implōrat. 10. Et agrōs et oppida Belgārum Germānī vāstant.

39. 1. The Belgians are imploring aid. 2. The troops lay waste the villages and towns of the Gauls. 3. Europe does not like the dangers of war. 4. The troops storm the camp of the Germans. 5. The boldness of the sailors is a danger. 6. The boys like the farmers' daughters. 7. The queen of the island urges on the troops.

Lesson 5

SECOND DECLENSION (-o-) STEMS, Continued

40. Certain peculiarities of inflection.

If **e** is contained in the stem as in **puer,** it appears in all cases. For example, **gener** (gen. **-erī**), *son-in-law;* **presbyter** (gen. **-erī**), *elder, priest;* **socer** (gen. **-erī**), *father-in-law;* **vesper** (gen. **-erī**), *evening.*

If **e** is not contained in the stem as in **ager** (gen. **agrī**), the nominative singular is formed by dropping the **o** of the stem and inserting **e** before **r.**

Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** usually contract and form the genitive singular in **-ī** instead of **-iī.** For example, **ingenium,** n. *character* (gen. **inge'nī**); **filius,** m. *son* (gen **filī**). In such cases the genitive is accented on the penult, even when short. The vocative singular of **filius** is **filī.**

Town names and a few common nouns have a locative case in **-ī.** For example, **Corinthī,** *at Corinth;* **domī,** *at home;* **humī,** *on the ground.*

Most nouns ending in **-us** and **-r** are masculine; those ending in **-um** are neuter.

41. Present Indicative of the Verb sum.

Singular		Plural	
sum,	*I am.*	**sumus,**	*we are.*
es,	*thou art, you are.*	**estis,**	*you are.*
est,	*he, she, it is.*	**sunt,**	*they are.*

42. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. A noun used with and explaining another noun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an Appositive and is said to be in apposition.

2. An appositive agrees with its noun in case, and, if possible, in number and gender.

Galba agricola, *Galba, the farmer.*

3. A noun connected with the subject by some form of the verb **sum** or other intransitive verb is called a Predicate Noun.

4. A predicate noun agrees in case and, whenever possible, in number and gender with the noun which it modifies.

Galba est agricola, *Galba is a farmer.*

43. VOCABULARY

arma, ōrum, n. pl., *weapons, arms, armour.*
aurum, ī, n., *gold.*
caelum, ī, n., *sky, heaven.*
fluvius, ī (iī), m., *river.*
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain.*
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
Sēquanī, ōrum, m, pl., *Sequani, a tribe of Gaul.*
vexō, *I harass, annoy.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*
vītō, *I avoid.*

EXERCISES

44. 1. Perīcula proeliōrum nōn vītāmus. 2. Es, sumus, sum, sunt. 3. Sēquanī agricolās, incolās vīcōrum, vexant. 4. Sēquanī sunt agricolae. 5. Est fluvius periculōrum. 6. Galba, agricola, fluvium amat. 7. Estis amīcī Sēquanōrum. 8. Dōna aurī laudant. 9. Amīcī sumus Galbae, nautae. 10. Germānī Rōmam, oppidum Italiae, oppugnant. 11. Gallī frūmentum incolārum īnsulae vāstant. 12. Galba, amīcus agricolae, et caelum et stellās laudat. 13. Bella et perīcula vītātis. 14. Sunt Belgae, amīcī Gallōrum.

45. 1. We are friends of Galba, the sailor. 2. You like the road, and avoid the river. 3. We harass the villages of the Sequani. 4. Galba, the farmer, is a friend of the sailors. 5. You are Gauls, friends of the Belgians. 6. You (plural) avoid the dangers of battle. 7. We like the sky, and the moon, and the stars. 8. The queen of the island is a friend of boys and girls.

Lesson 6

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

46. There are two declensions of adjectives, one being a combination of the first and second declensions of nouns, the other having the terminations of the third declension of nouns. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three distinct series of case-endings for the masculine, feminine, and neuter. Each series corresponds respectively to **o-** stems, **a-** stems, and neuter **o-** stems.

47. **Bonus,** *good;* stems, **bono-, bona-.**

	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	**bonus**	**bona**	**bonum**
Gen.	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bonī**
Dat.	**bonō**	**bonae**	**bonō**
Acc.	**bonum**	**bonam**	**bonum**
Abl.	**bonō**	**bonā**	**bonō**
	Plural		
Nom.	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bona**
Gen.	**bonōrum**	**bonārum**	**bonōrum**
Dat.	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**
Acc.	**bonōs**	**bonās**	**bona**
Abl.	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**

48. RULES OF SYNTAX

Adjectives may also be classified according to their use, as attributive or predicate.

An Attributive adjective modifies a noun directly.

bonus amīcus, *a good friend.*

A Predicate Adjective modifies a noun by being connected with it by a verb.

fortūna caeca est, *fortune is blind.*

The quality of the noun expressed by the attributive adjective is taken for granted, whereas the quality expressed by the predicate adjective is specifically asserted.

All adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

fortissimī sunt Belgae, *the Belgians are the bravest.*

49. **VOCABULARY**

fēmina, ae, f., *woman.*
hortus, ī, m., *garden.*
iūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden.*
lātus, a, um, *broad.*
longus, a, um, *long.*
magnus, a, um, *large, great.*
multus, a, um, *much;* pl., *many.*
parō, *I prepare.*
parvus, a, um, *small.*
populus, ī, m., *people.*
Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman;* as a noun, m., *a Roman.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory.*

EXERCISES

50. 1. Puerī nautae sunt parvī. 2. Fēminae Rōmānae sunt bonae. 3. Hortus est longus et lātus. 4. Rōmānī victoriās magnās amant. 5. Īnsula est magna. 6. Multa iūmenta parātis. 7. Victoria populī Rōmānī est magna. 8. Belgae et Sēquanī multa bella parant. 9. Cōpiae Rōmānae multōs agrōs Gallōrum vexant. 10. Viae Rōmae sunt longae, nōn lātae. 12. Gallī cōpiam frūmentī et multa iūmenta implōrant. 12. Multa iūmenta parāmus. 13. Hortus parvus est fēminae Rōmānae. 14. Oppida Rōmānōrum sunt magna et multa.

51. 1. The farmer's daughters are good. 2. The island is broad and long. 3. The people like a Roman victory. 4. Many Gauls are ravaging the broad fields. 5. You are getting ready the large beasts of burden. 6. We praise the woman's gardens and many roses. 7. The Roman people like courage and daring. 8. The villages of the Germans are small.

Lesson 7

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (Cont.)

52. Adjectives declined like **puer.**

liber, *free;* stems, **libero-, libera-.**

		Singular	
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	**līber**	**lībera**	**līberum**
Gen.	**līberī**	**līberae**	**līberī**
Dat.	**līberō**	**līberae**	**līberō**
Acc.	**līberum**	**līberam**	**līberum**
Abl.	**lībero**	**līberā**	**līberō**

		Plural	
Nom.	**līberī**	**līberae**	**lībera**
Gen.	**līberōrum**	**līberārum**	**līberōrum**
Dat.	**līberīs**	**līberīs**	**līberīs**
Acc.	**līberōs**	**līberās**	**lībera**
Abl.	**līberīs**	**līberīs**	**līberīs**

53. Adjectives declined like **ager.**

niger, *black;* stems, **nigro-, nigra-.**

	Singular		
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	**niger**	**nigra**	**nigrum**
Gen.	**nigrī**	**nigrae**	**nigrī**
Dat.	**nigrō**	**nigrae**	**nigrō**
Acc.	**nigrum**	**nigram**	**nigrum**
Abl.	**nigrō**	**nigrā**	**nigrō**
		Plural	
Nom.	**nigrī**	**nigrae**	**nigra**
Gen.	**nigrōrum**	**nigrārum**	**nigrōrum**
Dat.	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**
Acc.	**nigrōs**	**nigrās**	**nigra**
Abl.	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**

Most adjectives are declined like **niger.** The only adjectives in common use which are declined like **liber,** are **asper,** *rough;* **tener,** *tender;* and **miser,** *wretched.*

54. **VOCABULARY**

beātus, a, um, *happy.*
clārus, a, um, *bright, splendid, happy.*
Helvētiī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetii, a Celtic tribe.*
iniuria, ae, f., *injury.*
iustitia, ae, f., *justice.*
lēgātus, ī, m., *lieutenant.*
līber, era, erum, *free.*
numerum, ī, n., *number.*
nuntius, ī, (**iī**), m., *messenger.*
potentia, ae, f., *power.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful, pretty.*
servus, ī, m., *slave, servant.*
supero, *I overcome.*

EXERCISES

55. 1. Fēminae et puellae sunt beātae. 2. Populus Rōmānus multōs Gallōs superat. 3. Lēgātus Rōmānus, vir bonus, puerōs et puellās amat. 4. Nuntius Helvētiōrum iustitiam et nōn iniuriam implōrat. 5. Rōmānī sunt populus clārus. 6. Galba magnum numerum Gallōrum superat. 7. Belgae sunt līberī et beātī. 8. Terrae et īnsulae Eurōpae sunt parvae. 9. Nautae Rōmānī sunt asperī et miserī. 10. Iustitia, nōn iniuria, est bona. 11. Aurum Germānōrum vītāmus; victōriam et iustitiam implōrāmus. 12. Populus liber est populus beātus. 13. Lēgātī Helvētiōrum Rōmānōs vocant. 14. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum nuntiōs Graecōrum vexant. 15. Servus Galbae, lēgātī Rōmānī, est niger.

56. 1. The Helvetii are happy. 2. The slaves of the Roman lieutenants are black. 3. Galba, the lieutenant, likes great victories. 4. The Sequani are free and happy. 5. The rough Gauls lay waste the villages of the Helvetii. 6. Many villages of the Romans are beautiful. 7. The power of a good lieutenant is justice. 8. We praise good servants.

Lesson 8

THIRD DECLENSION

57. The third declension has several distinct classes of stems.[1]

I. Consonant—Stems, subdivided into:

(a) Mute (**p, b; t, d; c, g**) stems.
(b) Liquid (**l, r**) stems.
(c) Nasal (**m, n**) stems.

II. **ĭ**-stems.

III. Mixed Stems. (Consonant stems which have taken over some of the peculiarities of the inflection of **ĭ**-stems.)

Mute-stems

58. **mīles,** m., *soldier;* stem, **mīlit-. rēx,** m., *king;* stem, **rēg-.**

	Singular		Case-endings.
Nom.	**mīles**	**rēx**	**-s**
Gen.	**mīlitis**	**rēgis**	**-is**
Dat.	**mīlitī**	**rēgī**	**-ī**
Acc.	**mīlitem**	**rēgem**	**-em**
Abl.	**mīlite**	**rēge**	**-e**

[1] Since English words derived from Latin are generally taken from an oblique case, the stem of a Latin word may often be easily determined from a glance at its English derivative; e.g., **miles** (*milit*-ary, stem **milit-**); **cor** (*cord*-ial, stem **cord-**); **caput** (*capit*-al, stem **capit-**), etc.

		Plural	
Nom.	**mīlitēs**	**rēgēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**mīlitum**	**rēgum**	**-um**
Dat.	**mīlitibus**	**rēgibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**mīlitēs**	**rēgēs**	**-ēs**
Abl.	**mīlitibus**	**rēgibus**	**-ibus**

Cor, n., *heart;* stem, **cord-.** **caput,** n., *head;* stem, **capit-.**

	Singular		Case-endings.
Nom.	**cor**	**caput**	wanting
Gen.	**cordis**	**capitis**	**-is**
Dat.	**cordī**	**capitī**	**-ī**
Acc.	**cor**	**caput**	wanting
Abl.	**corde**	**capite**	**-e**
	Plural		Case-endings.
Nom.	**corda**	**capita**	**-a**
Gen.	.....	**capitum**	**-um**
Dat.	**cordibus**	**capitibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**corda**	**capita**	**-a**
Abl.	**cordibus**	**capitibus**	**-ibus**

Masculine and feminine nouns with stems ending in a mute form the nominative by adding **s** to the stem.

(a) A dental (**t, d**) disappears before **s,** as **mīles, nepōs** (stem, **nepōt-**), *grandson.*

(b) A guttural (**c, g**) joins with **s** to form **x,** as, **rēx, pāx** (stem, **pāc-**), *peace.*

The only neuters with stems ending in a mute are **cor, caput, lac,** *milk;* and Greek words like **poēma (-tis),** *poem.* In these, the nominative singular is the stem without the final consonant.

59. VOCABULARY

aeger, ra, rum, *sick.*
altus, a, um, *high, tall, deep.*
Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*
cōnfīrmō, *I establish.*
dīmicō, *I contend.*
eques, itis, m., *horseman;* pl., *cavalry.*
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland.*
imperō, *I demand.*

laetus, a, um, *glad, delightful.*
numerus, ī, m., *number.*
obses, idis, m., *hostage.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
virtūs, tūtis, f., *valor.*

EXERCISES

60. 1. Britannia est pulchra et Gallia laeta. 2. Virtūs multōrum equitum. 3. Clārā virtūte, clārae virtūtis, clāram virtūtem. 4. Rēgēs Rōmānī, rēgēs Rōmānōs, rēgī Rōmānō. 5. Audācia militum Rōmānōrum. 6. Magnus numerus obsidum Gallōrum. 7. Rōmānī rēgēs Gallōrum vocant. 8. Rēgīna Britanniae multōs obsidēs imperat. 9. Mīlites Rōmānī castra Gallōrum oppugnant. 10. Insula pulchra et parva est Hibernia. 11. Multī rēgēs potentiam amant. 12. Rēx equitēs laudat. 13. Rēx Britanniae magnum numerum obsidum imperat.

61. 1. The great daring of the cavalry. 2. Of peace, to peace, by peace, hostages. 3. Of hostages, from hostages, heads. 4. The horseman is tall and large. 5. You praise the valor and daring of the sailors. 6. The soldiers demand justice. 7. Ireland is a beautiful island, and Britain is a large country. 8. The kings of the lands are establishing peace.

Lesson 9

THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

Liquid-Stems

62. Liquid-Stems usually end in **-r**; a few end in **-l**. **cōnsul,** m., *consul;* stem, **consul-**. **victor,** m., *victor;* stem, **victor.**

	Singular		Case-endings.
Nom.	**cōnsul**	**victor**	wanting
Gen.	**cōnsulis**	**victōris**	**-is**
Dat.	**cōnsulī**	**victōrī**	**-ī**
Acc.	**cōnsulem**	**victōrem**	**-em**
Abl.	**cōnsule**	**victōre**	**-e**
	Plural		Case-endings.
Nom.	**cōnsulēs**	**victōrēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**cōnsulum**	**victōrum**	**-um**
Dat.	**cōnsulibus**	**victōribus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**cōnsulēs**	**victōrēs**	**-ēs**
Abl.	**cōnsulibus**	**victōribus**	**-ibus**

flōs, m., *flower;* stem, **flōr-.** **pater,** m., *father;* stem, **patr-.**

	Singular		Case-endings
Nom.	**flōs**	**pater**	wanting
Gen.	**flōris**	**patris**	**-is**
Dat.	**flōrī**	**patrī**	**-ī**
Acc.	**flōrem**	**patrem**	**-em**
Abl.	**flōre**	**patre**	**-e**

	Plural		Case-endings.
Nom.	**flōrēs**	**patrēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**flōrum**	**patrum**	**-um**
Dat.	**flōribus**	**patribus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**flōrēs**	**patrēs**	**-ēs**
Abl.	**flōribus**	**patribus**	**-ibus**

Most masculine and feminine nouns and many neuters, with stems ending in a liquid, form the nominative without the case-ending; as, **cōnsul; mulier,** *woman;* **cadāver,** *dead body.*

Many **r**-stems ended originally in **s,** hence the nominative **flōs; mōs,** *custom;* **aes,** *copper.* In such words the stem really ends in **-s,** but **s** between two vowels regularly became **r.** Thus, **mōs** (gen. **mōris**); **aes** (gen. **aeris**).

63. RULE OF SYNTAX

Place where must always be expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in.** Thus **in castrīs,** *in the camp.*

64. VOCABULARY

agger, eris, m., *embankment, rampart.*
arbor, oris, f., *tree.*
Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*
cōnsul, is, m., *consul.*
dominus, ī, m., *lord, ruler.*
glōria, ae, f., *glory.*
in, *in, on,* prep. with abl.
pater, tris, m., *father.*
poēta, ae, m., *poet.*
Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*
socius, ī (iī), m., *comrade, ally, companion.*
timor, ōris, m., *fear.*

EXERCISES

65. 1. Flōrēs patris, cōnsulēs Rōmānī. 2. Agger altus, timōribus magnīs. 3. Fīliī patris, fīliae patrum, patribus bonīs. 4. Arborēs silvae, timōrēs mīlitum, timōre magnō. 5. Arborēs silvae sunt altae. 6. Cōnsulēs magnās cōpiās parant. 7. Rhēnus est longus et altus. 8. Timōrēs sociōrum sunt multī et magnī. 9. Poēta Rōmānus arborēs et flōrēs silvae laudat. 10. Fābulae et arma et proelia mīlitum laudant. 11. Equitēs Caesaris sunt multī et bonī. 12. Lēgātī magnās cōpiās et multa iūmenta parant. 13. In altō Rhēnō est parva īnsula. 14. In parvā īnsulā sunt multae pulchrae arborēs.

66. 1. Of a sick father, in the trees of the forest. 2. By the fears of the allies, the fathers of the consuls. 3. On a high rampart, to Caesar's consuls. 4. The Roman consuls praise the virtue of the soldiers. 5. The trees in the forest are high. 6. Galba, the Roman lieutenant, praises the glory of peace. 7. The soldiers on the ramparts are contending. 8. The ruler of the Belgians is an ally of the Roman people. 9. The fear of Caesar is great. 10. The Roman cavalry harass the Gauls.

Lesson 10

THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

67. Liquid-Stems, continued. Neuter nouns.

genus, n., *race;* stem, **gener-**. **corpus**, n., *body*, stem, **corpor-**.

	Singular		Case-endings.
Nom.	**genus**	**corpus**	wanting
Gen.	**generis**	**corporis**	**-is**
Dat.	**generī**	**corporī**	**-ī**
Acc.	**genus**	**corpus**	wanting
Abl.	**genere**	**corpore**	**-e**

	Plural		Case-endings.
Nom.	**genera**	**corpora**	**-a**
Gen.	**generum**	**corporum**	**-um**
Dat.	**generibus**	**corporibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**genera**	**corpora**	**-a**
Abl.	**generibus**	**corporibus**	**-ibus**

68. Nasal-Stems

Nouns of this class end in **-n,** which often disappears in the nominative singular.

leō, m., *lion;* stem, **leōn-.** **virgō,** f., *maiden,* stem, **virgin-.**

	Singular		Case-endings.
Nom.	**leō**	**virgō**	wanting
Gen.	**leōnis**	**virginis**	**-is**
Dat.	**leōnī**	**virginī**	**-ī**
Acc.	**leōnem**	**virginem**	**-em**
Abl.	**leōne**	**virgine**	**-e**
	Plural		Case-endings
Nom.	**leōnēs**	**virginēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**leōnum**	**virginum**	**-um**
Dat.	**leōnibus**	**virginibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**leōnēs**	**virginēs**	**-ēs**
Abl.	**leōnibus**	**virginibus**	**-ibus**

flūmen, n., *river;* stem **flūmin-**

	Singular	Case-endings		Plural	Case-endings
Nom.	**flūmen**	wanting	*Nom.*	**flūmina**	**-a**
Gen.	**flūminis**	**-is**	*Gen.*	**flūminum**	**-um**
Dat.	**flūminī**	**-ī**	*Dat.*	**flūminibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**flumen**	wanting	*Acc.*	**flūmina**	**-a**
Abl.	**flumine**	**-e**	*Abl.*	**flūminibus**	**-ibus**

Stems in **-ōn-** have the nominative in **-ō,** as **leō; legiō,** *legion.*

Stems in **-din-** and **-gin-** have the nominative in **-ō,** as **virgō; ōrdō,** *rank.*

Stems in **-in-** (not **-din-** or **-gin-**) have the nominative in **-en,** as **flumen, tībīcen,** *flute-player.*

There is only one stem in **-m, hiems** (*gen.* **hiemis**), f., *winter.*

69. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. The ablative, with or without **cum,** is used to denote the manner in which an act is performed.

2. **Cum** is usually used with a noun which has no adjective modifying it. **Cum cūrā labōrant,** *they work with care.* **magnā virtūte pugnant,** *they fight with great valor.*

70. VOCABULARY

aut, conj., *or*. **aut...aut**, *either...or*.
cum, prep. with abl., *with*.
dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender*.
dolor, ōris, m., *grief*.
nōmen, inis, n., *name*.
flūmen, inis, n., *river*.
genus, eris, n., *race, kind*.
latrō, ōnis, m., *robber, highway-man*.
sōl, is, m., *sun*.
soror, ōris, f., *sister*.
uxor, ōris, f., *wife, consort*.
vituperō, *I blame*.

EXERCISES

71. 1. Aut soror aut uxor. 2. Cum dolōre, magnā virtūte. 3. Magna flūmina, multōrum flūminum, multīs flūminibus. 4. Nōmina arborum, dēditiōne, sōle, magnus dolor uxōris. 5. Potentia cum iustitiā est bona. 6. Nōmen flūminis est Rhēnus. 7. Nautae cum virtūte dīmicant. 8. Mīlitēs magnō perīculō castra Gallōrum oppugnant. 9. Rēx dolōrem et timōrem equitum vituperat. 10. Latrōnēs sunt in lātā silvā. 11. Dēditionem vīcōrum dominus imperat. 12. Puella aut mīlitis aut nautae est soror. 13. Dolor patris puerōrum est magnus. 14. Galba, cōnsul Rōmānus, in aggere cum audāciā dīmicat.

72. 1. Of grief, with fear, of rivers. 2. Races, griefs, by names. 3. Either of the sister or of the wife. 4. The grief of the soldier's sister is great. 5. We blame either the Gallic soldiers or Roman cavalry. 6. The Germans attack the rampart of the Roman camp. 7. You blame the rulers of the countries. 8. In the small islands are many beautiful trees. 9. The name of the long river is the Rhine.

REVIEW

73. 1. Agricolae īnsulārum, puellās nautārum, poētīs. 2. Insulae silvās vāstant. 3. Germānī auxilium implōrant. 4. Et agrōs et oppida Eurōpae vāstant. 5. Gallī, amīcī Belgārum, frūmentum incolārum vāstant. 6. Iūmenta Gallōrum sunt parva. 7. Populī līberī sunt populī beatī. 8. Rēgēs magnum numerum equitum laudant. 9. In parvā īnsulā sunt multae flōrēs et arborēs. 10. Nautae magnā virtūte castra Gallōrum oppugnant.

Lesson 11

THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

74. (ĭ-) stems, Masculine and Feminine

Masculine and Feminine ĭ-stems end in **-is** in the nominative singular, and always have **-ium** in the genitive plural. They have **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural, and a few, like **turris,** have **-im** in the accusative singular, and **-ī** in the ablative singular.

hostis, m., *enemy;* stem, **hosti.** **auris,** f., *ear.*

	Singular		Case-endings
Nom.	**hostis**	**auris**	**-is**
Gen.	**hostis**	**auris**	**-is**
Dat.	**hostī**	**aurī**	**-ī**
Acc.	**hostem**	**aurem**	**-em**
Abl.	**hoste**	**aure**	**-e**
	Plural		Case-endings
Nom.	**hostēs**	**aurēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**hostium**	**aurium**	**-ium**[1]
Dat.	**hostibus**	**auribus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**hostīs (-ēs)**	**aurīs (-ēs)**	**-īs, -ēs**
Abl.	**hostibus**	**auribus**	**-ibus**

Neuter

75. Nouns of this class end in **-e, -al,** or **-ar** in the nominative singular They always have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ia** in the nominative, accusative and vocative plural, and **-ium** in the genitive plural. Most of these words lose the final **-i** of the stem in the nominative singular; others retain it as **-e.**

mare, n., *sea;* stem, **mari-.** **animal,** n., *animal;* stem, **animali-.**

	Singular		Case-endings
Nom.	**mare**	**animal**	wanting
Gen.	**maris**	**animālis**	**-is**
Dat.	**marī**	**animalī**	**-ī**
Acc.	**mare**	**animal**	wanting
Abl.	**marī**	**animālī**	**-ī**

[1] Strictly speaking **ī**-stem nouns are declined just as other nouns of the Third Declension. The **i** of the endings **-ium** (genitive plural) and **-ia** (nom. and acc. neuter plural) do not properly belong to the ending but to the stem.

	Plural		Case-endings
Nom.	**maria**	**animālia**	**-ia**
Gen.	**marium**	**animālium**	**-ium**
Dat.	**maribus**	**animālibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**maria**	**animālia**	**-ia**
Abl.	**maribus**	**animālibus**	**-ibus**

In most words of this class the final **-i** of the stem disappears in the nominative singular. In others it appears as **-e.**

RULES OF SYNTAX

76. The Dative is used with verbs to denote the Indirect Object.

haec Galbae nuntiant, *they announce these things to Galba.*

77. The ablative is used to denote the means by which anything is accomplished.

Gladiīs pugnant, *they fight with swords.*

78. ## VOCABULARY

animal, ālis, n., *animal.*
auris, is, f., *ear.*
collis, is, m., *hill.*
dōnō, *give, present.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader.*
gladius, ī, m., *sword.*
hostis, is, m., *enemy.*
mare, is, n., *sea.*
māter, tris, f., *mother.*
nāvis, is, f., *ship.*
occupō, *I take possession of, occupy.*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
sedīle, is, n., *seat.*

EXERCISES

79. 1. Aurēs, aurīs. 2. Collium, colle. 3. Animālia, animālī. 4. Multīs animalibus, maria alta. 5. Galbae flōrēs dōnō. 6. Animālia in marī altō sunt multa. 7. Hostēs magnā audāciā collēs occupant. 8. Nautae Rōmānī gladiīs nāvēs hostium occupant. 9. In sedīlī lēgātī sunt multae flōrās. 10. Hostibus multum aurum dōnāmus. 11. In aggeribus armīs dīmicant. 12. Multī rēgēs pācem nōn cōnfīrmant. 13. Cōpia flōrum et multa animālia sunt in īnsulā parvā. 14. Ubi sunt sociī Rōmānōrum? 15. Caesar hostēs multīs proeliīs superat.

80. 1. Animals, to an animal, in the sea. 2. Gifts of gold, mothers of soldiers, in the seats. 3. The ears of the animal, the sailors of the ships, the cavalry of the enemy. 4. The enemy are taking possession of many lands. 5. On the high mound many soldiers are fighting with weapons. 6. You are giving the woman money. 7. Great fear takes possession of the minds of the Romans. 8. Caesar by means of gold establishes peace with many lands. 9. There are large animals on the small island.

Lesson 12

THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

Mixed ĭ-stems.

81. Mixed **ĭ**-stems are consonant-stems which have assumed **i** forms in the plural. Thus they are declined like consonant-stems in the singular, like **i**-stems in the plural.

urbs, f., *city;* stem, **urb (i-). cliēns,** m., *client;* stem **client (i-).**

	Singular		Plural		
Nom.	**urbs**	**cliēns**	*Nom.*	**urbēs**	**clientēs**
Gen.	**urbis**	**clientis**	*Gen.*	**urbium**	**clientium**
Dat.	**urbī**	**clientī**	*Dat.*	**urbibus**	**clientibus**
Acc.	**urbem**	**clientem**	*Acc.*	**urbīs (-ēs)**	**clientīs (-ēs)**
Abl.	**urbe**	**cliente**	*Abl.*	**urbibus**	**clientibus**

This class includes:

(a) Nouns in **-ēs,** with genitive in **-is;** as **nūbēs,** *cloud;* **aedēs,** *temple,* etc.

(b) Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant; as **ars,** *skill;* **arx,** *citadel,* etc.

(c) Most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs;** as **cliēns; cohors,** *cohort.*

(d) Nouns in **-ās** or **-īs;** as **civitās,** *state;* **līs,** *strife.*

82. VOCABULARY

caedēs, is, f., *slaughter.*
cīvitās, tātis, f., *state.*
cliēns, clientis, m., *client.*
gladius, ī (iī), m., *sword.*
līberī, ōrum, m. pl., *children* (i. e. *free born*).
mens, mentis, f., *mind.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
pars, partis, f., *part.*
paucī, ae, a, *few,* used only in pl.
turris, is, f., *tower.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

EXERCISES

83. 1. Civitātēs Gallōrum, caedēs animālium. 2. In montibus altīs, gladiīs magnīs, cum multīs clientibus. 3. Timōrēs multī mentēs mīlitum occupant. 4. Paucae cīvitātēs iūmenta parant. 5. Hostēs magnā virtūte altōs montēs oppugnant. 6. Cīvitātēs Germānōrum pācem implōrant. 7. Urbēs Rōmānōrum sunt et magnae et pulchrae. 8. In turribus sunt multī mīlitēs. 9. Līberī Galbae sunt in monte altō. 10. Pars cīvitātis pācem nōn amat. 11. Caedēs hostium est magna. 12. Belgae cum virtūte gladiīs dīmicant. 13. Līberī clientis sunt in silvā. 14. Caedēs fēminārum et līberōrum in bellō nōn est bonum.[1] 15. Pauca animālia sunt in silvā parvā. 16. In sedīlibus sunt gladiī rēgum.

84. 1. In the tower, in the city, in the sea. 2. The kings of the states, the camp of the enemy, the forests of the mountain. 3. With great daring they take possession of the mountain. 4. The cavalry of the Germans contend with the Roman soldiers. 5. The rulers give swords to the lieutenants. 6. The children of the client like flowers. 7. In the forests of the mountains are many beautiful flowers. 8. There are eagles in the trees of the high mountains.

Lesson 13

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

85. The following rules may be taken as general guides in determining the gender of nouns in the Third Declension.

1. Nouns in **-er, -es, -ēs, -ex** (gen. **-icis**), **-ō** (gen. **-ōnis**), **-or,** and **-ōs** are masculine.

2. Nouns in **-ās, -is, -ō** (gen. **-inis**), **-iō, -s** (preceded by a consonant), **-ūs,** and **-x** are feminine.

3. Nouns in **-c, -e, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur,** and **-ŭs** are neuter.

There are many exceptions, however, to the foregoing rules.

RULE OF SYNTAX

86. The Ablative is used to express Cause, sometimes accompanied by a preposition . . . **ab, dē,** or **ex.**

Veneris praesidiō ferox, *bold because of the protection of Venus.*

ex vulnere aeger, *disabled by a wound.*

---

[1] The neuter of an adjective is often used as a substantive. Translate "a good thing."

87. **VOCABULARY**

antīquus, a, um, *old, ancient.*
iuvenis, is, m., *young man.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom;* plur., *manners.*
nūntiō, *I announce.*
postulō, *I demand.*
secrētum, ī, n., *secret, mystery.*
semper, adv., *always, ever.*
vultur, vulturis, m., *vulture.*

EXERCISES

88. 1. Iuvenis bonī, iuvenum bonōrum, iuvenī bonō. 2. Magna secrēta, magnī sedīlis, in magnō sedīlī. 3. Antīquī mōrēs, antīquōs mōrēs, antīquīs mōribus. 4. In pulchrā turrī, arborēs altae, in magnō marī. 5. Iuvenēs secrēta Galbae nūntiant. 6. Mōrēs antīquī semper sunt bonī. 7. Vulturēs et aquilae sunt in altīs montibus. 8. Rēx hostibus aurum ex timōre dōnat. 9. Multa genera arborum pulchrārum sunt in silvā. 10. Nūntiī magnum proelium et dēditiōnem hostium nūntiant. 11. Hostēs victōriā dōna aurī postulant. 12. Galbae, lēgātō Rōmānō, secrēta hostium nūntiō. 13. Mōrēs Rōmānōrum laudātis. 14. Rōmānī et sociī cum principibus hostium pācem cōnfīrmant. 15. Mīlitēs magnā audāciā aggerem et altās turrīs oppugnant.

89. 1. To the good young men; of the good young man; of the deep rivers. 2. The name of the deep river; the secret of the high tower; the customs of the Romans. 3. The vultures in the trees; many kinds of animals; fear of the enemy. 4. He announces the secret of the high tower. 5. Because of fear he gives the enemy presents of gold. 6. Because of the power of the Romans the enemy makes peace. 7. The troops are happy, and like the dangers of war. 8. The allies of the Romans fight with valor.

Lesson 14

FOURTH DECLENSION (-u-) STEMS

90. Masculines and feminines form the nominative by adding **s** to the stem. Neuters have the stem with the vowel lengthened for the nominative.

frūctus, m., *fruit;* stem, **frūctu.**

Singular		Case-endings	Plural		Case-endings
Nom.	**frūctus**	**-us**	*Nom.*	**frūctūs**	**-ūs**
Gen.	**frūctūs**	**-ūs**	*Gen.*	**frūctuum**	**-uum**
Dat.	**frūctuī (ū)**	**-uī (ū)**	*Dat.*	**frūctibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**frūctum**	**-um**	*Acc.*	**frūctūs**	**-ūs**
Abl.	**frūctū**	**-ū**	*Abl.*	**frūctibus**	**-ibus**

cornū, n., *horn;* stem, **cornū-**

Singular		Case-endings	Plural		Case-endings
Nom.	**cornū**	**-ū**	*Nom.*	**cornua**	**-ua**
Gen.	**cornūs**	**-ūs**	*Gen.*	**cornuum**	**-uum**
Dat.	**cornū**	**-ū**	*Dat.*	**cornibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**cornū**	**-ū**	*Acc.*	**cornua**	**-ua**
Abl.	**cornū**	**-ū**	*Abl.*	**cornibus**	**-ibus**

The stem-vowel is usually weakened to **i** before the ending **-bus.**

Nouns of the fourth declension in **-us** are usually masculine. Those ending in **-ū** are neuter.

A few of the commonest nouns in **-us** which are feminine are **anus,** *old woman;* **domus,** *house;* **manus,** *hand;* **socrus,** *mother-in-law.*

Ablative singular of **domus** = **domō;** acc. plu. = **domōs.**

91. VOCABULARY

collocō, *I place, arrange, station.*
cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).
dē, *concerning,* prep. with abl.
dexter, tra, trum, *right.*
dubitō, *I doubt, am in doubt.*
equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion.*
manus, ūs, f., *hand, band, force* (of troops).
peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*
portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*
quercus, ūs, f., *oak.*
reliquus, a, um, *remaining.*
senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

EXERCISES

92. 1. Manūs, manū, manibus. 2. Cornū, cornua, cornuum. 3. rūctum, portuī, portuum. 4. Senātus Rōmānus, cornūs, frūctū. 5.

Caesar cum reliquīs legiōnibus oppidum oppugnat. 6. Timor mentēs reliquōrum militum occupat. 7. Dē militibus sociōrum dubitātis. 8. Equitātum in cornibus collocō. 9. Frūctūs arborum in parvā īnsula sunt bonī. 10. In dextrō cornū peditātum collocātis. 11. Mīlites senātum Rōmānum accūsant. 12. Caesar dē virtūte legiōnum Rōmānārum nōn dubitat. 13. Nāvēs in portū nōn sunt Rōmānae. 14. Altae quercūs et multī vulturēs sunt in montibus. 15. Caesar multa secrēta senātuī nūntiat. 16. Caedēs legiōnum in Britanniā est magna. 17. Rēgēs populōrum Eurōpae accusāmus.

93. 1. Of the harbor, to the senate, concerning the fruits. 2. The bands, in the harbors, the wings. 3. The horns, of the horns, in the senate. 4. Caesar is in doubt about the courage of the legions. 5. Because of the victory the soldiers are demanding gifts of gold. 6. In the harbor is a small island. 7. On the island are many oaks and beautiful flowers. 8. The Roman senate is arranging a peace with the enemy. 9. He places the remaining legions on the right wing.

Lesson 15

FIFTH DECLENSION (-ē-) STEMS

94. The nominative is formed by adding **s** to the stem.

diēs, m., *day;* stem, **diē-.** **rēs,** f., *thing;* stem, **rē-.**

	Singular		Case-endings
Nom.	**diēs**	**rēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**diēī**	**rĕī**	**-ĕī**
Dat.	**diēī**	**rĕī**	**-ĕī**
Acc.	**diem**	**rem**	**-em**
Abl.	**diē**	**rē**	**-ē**
	Plural		Case-endings
Nom.	**diēs**	**rēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**diērum**	**rērum**	**-ērum**
Dat.	**diēbus**	**rēbus**	**-ēbus**
Acc.	**diēs**	**rēs**	**-ēs**
Abl.	**diēbus**	**rēbus**	**-ēbus**

The genitive and dative singular ending is **-ĕī,** instead of **-ēī,** when a consonant precedes; as **spĕī, rĕī.**

Diēs and **rēs** are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are declined throughout. Except for the nominative and accusative, the plural forms of other nouns are rare.

All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except **diēs,** and **meridiēs,** *midday,* which are masculine. Even **diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular.

95. **VOCABULARY**

aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle.*
diēs, diēī, m., *day.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
fidēs, ĕī, f., *fidelity, loyalty.*
homo, inis, m., *man.*
perniciēs, ēī, f., *destruction, ruin.*
rēs, rĕī, f., *thing.*
spēs, spĕī, f., *hope.*

EXERCISES

96. 1. Fideī, fidem, dē fidē. 2. Aciērum, in aciē, aciēbus. 3. Spēs victōriae, spēbus auxilī, dē multīs rēbus. 4. Multārum rērum, dē magnā rē, speī. 5. Lēgātus Rōmānus dē fidē Gallōrum dubitat. 6. Turrēs magnā spē victoriae oppugnant. 7. Caesar equitēs in cornibus collocat et cum hostibus dīmicant. 8. In aciē Rōmānā sunt multī sociī. 9. Belgae cum parvā manū exercitum hostium oppugnant. 10. Sociī Rōmānis multa dē hostibus nūntiant. 11. Caedēs hostium est magna. 12. Spēs senātūs et populī est in virtūte mīlitum. 13. Gallī magnā audāciā cum legiōnibus Rōmānīs dīmicant. 14. In portū sunt multae nāvēs. 15. Hostēs victōriā multōs obsidēs imperant.

97. 1. In the lines of battle, hope of victory, destruction of the army. 2. Day of hope, by the destruction, for the day. 3. We are in doubt concerning the loyalty of the lieutenant. 4. They announce many things about the war. 5. Because of many great battles, fear possesses the minds of the soldiers. 6. The fidelity of the allies of the Romans is not great. 7. The remaining soldiers like the dangers of war. 8. The general's hopes for victory are small.

Lesson 16

NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

98. Nine adjectives in **-us** or **-er** have the genitive and dative singular of all genders in **-īus** and **-ī** respectively.

These adjectives are,

alius (neuter **aliud**), *other;* **nūllus,** *no;* **sōlus,** *only;*
alter, *the other;* **ūllus,** *any;* **tōtus,** *whole;*
neuter, *neither;* **ūnus,** *one;* **uter,** *which* (of two).

They are declined as follows:

	Singular					
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	**alius**	**alia**	**aliud**	**alter**	**altera**	**alterum**
Gen.	[1]**alīus**	**alīus**	**alīus**	**alterĭus**	**alterĭus**	**alterĭus**
Dat.	**aliī**	**aliī**	**aliī**	**alterī**	**alterī**	**alterī**
Acc.	**alium**	**aliam**	**aliud**	**alterum**	**alteram**	**alterum**
Abl.	**aliō**	**aliā**	**aliō**	**alterō**	**alterā**	**alterō**

The plural is regular, like **bonus.**

Nom.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**	**uter**	**utra**	**utrum**
Gen.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**utrīus**	**utrīus**	**utrīus**
Dat.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**utrī**	**utrī**	**utrī**
Acc.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**utrum**	**utram**	**utrum**
Abl.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**utrō**	**utrā**	**utrō**

The plural is regular, like **bonus.**

99. VOCABULARY

aedificium, ī, n., *building.*
amor, ōris, m., *love.*
bestia, ae, f., *animal, beast.*
corōna, ae, f., *wreath, crown.*
firmō, *I make firm.*
furor, ōris, m., *rage, fury.*
inimīcus, ī, *an enemy* (*personal enemy* as opposed to **hostis,** *a public enemy*).
narrō, *I relate, tell.*
pariēs, etis, m., *wall.*
saepe, adv., *often, frequently.*
sine, *without,* prep., with abl.
terror, ōris, m., *terror, alarm.*

EXERCISES

100. 1. Aliud aedificium, alterius amōris, alius amor. 2. Tōtīus corōnae, tōtī parietī, nūllus furor. 3. Nūllae bestiae, nūllīus bestiae, utrōrum parietum. 4. Ūnum aedificium, alius pariēs, neutrīs corōnīs. 5. Rēgēs tōtīus Galliae dīmicant. 6. Altera corōna est pulchra. 7. Magnō terrōre alterum oppidum oppugnant. 8. Mīlitēs alīus legiōnis nōn laudāmus. 9. Populus Rōmānus dē fidē ūnīus rēgis dubitat. 10.

---

[1] The form **alterĭus** is usually used in place of **alīus.**

Spēs victōriae mīlitēs et aliōs firmat. 11. Galba multās aliās fābulās dē bestiīs narrat. 12. Saepe in castrīs est magnus terror. 13. Aliōs equitēs in cornū collocat. 14. Sine ullō timōre alteram turrim oppugnant.

101. 1. Of the whole building; other crowns; no terror. 2. Of another wall; the other animal; another crown. 3. Of neither enemy (personal); in one battle; of the other alarm. 4. The senate and the Roman people are in doubt about the loyalty of the soldiers. 5. One wall of the building is high. 6. The soldiers avoid the dangers of another battle. 7. Neither king likes the country and the people. 8. The lieutenant is telling the other story about the surrender.

Lesson 17

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

102. These adjectives are classified according to the number of endings in the nominative singular, as adjectives of one, two or three endings.

With the exception of comparatives and a few other words all follow the inflection of ĭ-stem. They have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **ium** in the genitive plural, **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural masculine and feminine, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

103. Adjectives of One Ending.

Audāx, *bold;* stem, **audac-.** **recēns,** *recent;* stem, **recent-.**

Singular

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	**audax**	**audāx**	**recēns**	**recēns**
Gen.	**audācis**	**audācis**	**recentis**	**recentis**
Dat.	**audācī**	**audācī**	**recenti**	**recenti**
Acc.	**audācem**	**audāx**	**recentem**	**recēns**
Abl.	**audācī**	**audācī**	**recentī**	**recentī**

Plural

Nom.	**audācēs**	**audācia**	**recentēs**	**recentia**
Gen.	**audācium**	**audācium**	**recentium**	**recentium**
Dat.	**audācibus**	**audācibus**	**recentibus**	**recentibus**
Acc.	**audācīs (-ēs)**	**audācia**	**recentīs (-ēs)**	**recentia**
Abl.	**audācibus**	**audācibus**	**recentibus**	**recentibus**

pār, *equal;* stem, **par-.** **vetus,** *old;* stem, **veter-.**

	Singular			
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	**pār**	**pār**	**vetus**	**vetus**
Gen.	**paris**	**paris**	**veteris**	**veteris**
Dat.	**parī**	**parī**	**veterī**	**veterī**
Acc.	**parem**	**par**	**veterem**	**vetus**
Abl.	**parī**	**parī**	**vetere**	**vetere**
	Plural			
Nom.	**parēs**	**paria**	**veterēs**	**vetera**
Gen.	**parium**	**parium**	**veterum**	**veterum**
Dat.	**paribus**	**paribus**	**veteribus**	**veteribus**
Acc.	**parīs (-ēs)**	**paria**	**veterēs**	**vetera**
Abl.	**paribus**	**paribus**	**veteribus**	**veteribus**

Comparatives and **vetus** are declined as pure consonant-stems.

104. VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., *approach.*
adulēscēns, entis, m., *young man.*
audax, audācis, *bold, daring.*
clēmens, ntis, *mild, gentle.*
cohors, rtis, f., *cohort.*
concilium, ī, n., *council.*
dēlectō, *I delight.*
dēlīberō, *I deliberate, consult.*
ferax, ferācis, *fertile.*
Haeduī, ōrum, m. pl. *Haedui, a Gallic tribe.*
prīnceps, cipis, m., *chief.*
tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune.*

EXERCISES

105. 1. Alius aditus, nūllī adulēscentēs, ūlla cohors. 2. Audācis adulēscentis, ferācēs agrī, prīncipum clēmentium. 3. Alīī cohortī, aliae cohortēs, nūllōs prīncipēs. 4. Audācēs prīncipēs Haeduōrum dēlīberant. 5. Ager ferax agricolam dēlectat. 6. Senātus Rōmānus concilium prīncipum Haeduōrum nōn amat. 7. Tribūnus dē fidē ducum Gallōrum dubitat. 8. Mīlitēs audācēs ducēs semper dēlectant. 9. Equitēs sine timōre terram ferācem Belgārum vexant. 10. Alteram cohortem in aciē collocāmus. 11. Nūllōs mīlitēs alterius legiōnis laudātis. 12. Dux Rōmānōrum est clēmens et audax. 13. Flōrēs agrōrum ferācium sunt pulchrī. 14. Adulēscentēs de perniciē recentī exercitūs narrant.

106. 1. No approach; daring chiefs; of the whole council. 2. The old tribunes; to another cohort; on the other hill. 3. From equal legions; of gentle tribunes; by bold battles. 4. The fertile fields delight the farmers. 5. The Roman leaders and the Gallic chiefs are deliberating. 6. The soldiers are bold because of hope of victory. 7. Daring men do not avoid the dangers of battle. 8. The wreaths of flowers delight the farmer's daughters. 9. The beasts of the forest attack men with fury.

Lesson 18

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

107. Adjectives of Two Endings.

levis, *light;* stem, **levi.** **levior,** *lighter;* stem, **levior-.**

	Singular			
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	**levis**	**leve**	**levior**	**levius**
Gen.	**levis**	**levis**	**leviōris**	**leviōris**
Dat.	**levī**	**levī**	**leviōrī**	**leviōrī**
Acc.	**levem**	**leve**	**leviōrem**	**levius**
Abl.	**levī**	**levī**	**leviōre**	**leviōre**
	Plural			
Nom.	**levēs**	**levia**	**leviōres**	**leviōra**
Gen.	**levium**	**levium**	**leviōrum**	**leviōrum**
Dat.	**levibus**	**levibus**	**leviōribus**	**leviōribus**
Acc.	**levīs (-ēs)**	**levia**	**leviōres**	**leviōra**
Abl.	**levibus**	**levibus**	**leviōribus**	**leviōribus**

Levior is the comparative of **levis.** All comparatives are regularly declined like **levior.**

Plus, *more,* is used in the singular only as a neuter noun. It is declined as follows:

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	———	**plūs**	**plūrēs**	**plūra**
Gen.	———	**plūris**	**plūrium**	**plūrium**
Dat.	———	———	**plūribus**	**plūribus**
Acc.	———	**plūs**	**plūres (-īs)**	**plūra**
Abl.	———	———	**plūribus**	**plūribus**

108. Adjectives of Three Endings.

ācer, *sharp;* stem, **ācri-.**

		Singular	
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**
Gen.	**ācris**	**ācris**	**ācris**
Dat.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**
Acc.	**ācrem**	**ācrem**	**ācre**
Abl.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**
		Plural	
Nom.	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**
Gen.	**ācrium**	**ācrium**	**ācrium**
Dat.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**
Acc.	**ācrīs** (**ēs**)	**ācrīs** (**-ēs**)	**ācria**
Abl.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**

Celer, *swift,* has the nominative singular **celer, celeris, celere,** the second **e** being a part of the stem.

109. VOCABULARY

celer, eris, ere, *swift.*
commūnis, e, *common.*
complūrēs, ra, gen. **ium,** *very many.*
coniurō, *I conspire.*
crūdēlis, e, *cruel.*
difficilis, e, *difficult.*
equester, tris, tre, *equestrian, cavalry* (adjective).
fortis, e, *brave, courageous.*
incolumis, e, *unharmed.*
nāvālis, e, *naval.*
nōbilis, e, *noble.*
omnis, e, *all, every.*
Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., *Veneti, a Gallic tribe.*

EXERCISES

110. 1. Celerium equōrum, in omnibus agrīs, nōbilēs principēs. 2. Complūribus Venetīs, equestrī proeliō, proelia nāvālia. 3. Concilia commūnia, conciliīs commūnibus, mīlitī crūdēlī. 4. Fēminae et līberī sunt incolumēs. 5. Cum mīlitibus celeribus collem oppugnat. 6. Fortēs hominēs perīcula proelī nōn vītant. 7. Lēgātī Rōmānī sunt adulēscentes fortēs et nōbilēs. 8. Complūrēs Venetī sine timōre coniurant. 9.

Rōmāni et socii in conciliō commūnī dēlīberant. 10. Tribūnī proeliīs nāvālibus hostēs superant. 11. Nūntiī celerēs populō dē perīculīs communibūs nuntiant. 12. Hostēs proeliō equestrī superat. 13. Omnēs aditūs sunt difficilēs. 14. Complūres prīncipēs auxilium Caesaris implōrant. 15. Fēmina nōbilis est clēmens et fortis.

111. 1. Swift messengers; in fertile fields; by cavalry battles. 2. To courageous women; of very many young men; a naval battle. 3. From noble chiefs; of a cruel soldier; from a noble girl. 4. The Roman people are deliberating in common council. 5. The daring young men are unharmed. 6. The messenger announces the destruction of the noble army. 7. Both the Haedui and the Veneti are conspiring. 8. You are praising the soldiers and tribunes of the other legion.

REVIEW

112. The regular case-endings for the nouns and adjectives of the various declensions are as follows:

	Decl. I	Decl. II			Decl. III		Decl. IV		Decl. V
					Singular				
	F.	M.		N.	M.F.	N.	M.	N.	F.
Nom.	**-a**	**-us**		**-um**	**-s**		**-us**	**-ū**	**-ēs**
					(modified stem)				
Gen.	**-ae**		**-ī**		**-is**		**-ūs**		**-ĕ̄ī** (**-ē**)
Dat.	**-ae**		**-ō**		**-ī**		**-uī**(**-ū**)	**-ū**	**-ĕ̄ī** (**-ē**)
Acc.	**-am**	**-um**		**-um**	**-em**(**-im**)	(like nom.)	**-um**	**-ū**	**-em**
Abl.	**-ā**		**-ō**		**-ĕ̄**(**ī**)		**-ū**		**-ē**
Voc.	**-a**	**-e**		**-um**	(like nom.)		**-us**	**-ū**	**-ēs**
					Plural				
Nom. and Voc.	**-ae**	**-ī**		**-a**	**-ēs**	**-a,-(i)a**	**-ūs**	**-ua**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**-ārum**		**-ōrum**		**-um-(i)um**		**-uum**		**-ērum**
Dat. and Abl.	**-īs**		**-īs**		**-ibus**		**-ibus**(**-ubus**)		**-ēbus**
Acc.	**-ās**	**-ōs**		**-a**	**-ēs** (**īs**)	**-a,-(i)a**	**-ūs**	**-ua**	**-ēs**

Lesson 19

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

113. In Latin, as in English, adjectives have three degrees of comparison—the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior** (neut. **-ius**), the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a, -um**) to the genitive singular of the Positive minus its ending.

114. Participles used as adjectives are compared in the same manner.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus, *high*	**altior**	**altissimus**
fortis, *brave*	**fortior**	**fortissimus**
fēlīx, *happy*	**fēlīcior**	**felicissimus**
amāns, *loving*	**amāntior**	**amantissimus**

115. Adjectives in **-er** form their Comparative in the regular way, but form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative of the Positive.

asper, *rough*	**asperior**	**asperrimus**
celer, *swift*	**celerior**	**celerrimus**
pulcher, *beautiful*	**pulchrior**	**pulcherrimus**

116. Six adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the genitive of the Positive minus its ending. The comparative is regular.

facilis, *easy*	**facilior**	**facillimus**
difficilis, *difficult*	**difficilior**	**difficillimus**
dissimilis, *unlike*	**dissimilior**	**dissimillimus**
gracilis, *slender*	**gracilior**	**gracillimus**
humilis, *low*	**humilior**	**humillimus**
similis, *like*	**similior**	**simillimus**

117. Other adjectives in **-lis** are compared regularly: as, **utilis,** *useful,* **utilior, utilissimus.**

RULES OF SYNTAX

118. Comparison is expressed by using **quam,** *than,* or by the ablative without **quam.**

nihil est amabilius quam virtus: nihil est virtūte amabilius, *nothing is more attractive than virtue.*

119. Superlativeness is expressed by the genitive. **asperrima viārum,** *the roughest of the roads.*

120. VOCABULARY

asper, era, erum, *rough.*
facilis, e, *easy.*
fēlīx, fēlīcis, *fortunate, happy.*
gracilis, e, *slender.*
humilis, e, *low, humble.*
similis, e, *like.*
ūtilis, e, *useful.*
vallis, is, f., *valley.*

EXERCISES

121. 1. Flōrēs graciliōrēs, urbium pulcherrimārum, collēs asperrimī. 2. In vallibus altissimīs, hominum fēlīcium, fīliīs simillimīs. 3. Aditū difficillimō, via asperior, flumina altiōra. 4. Belgae sunt fortissimī omnium Gallōrum. 5. Viae Galliae sunt asperrimae. 6. Rōma est urbs pulcherrima. 7. In exercitū Rōmānōrum mīlites sunt fortissimī. 8. In Ītaliā est magnus numerus hominum fēlīcissimōrum. 9. Fīliae agricolae sunt pulchriōrēs. 10. Flūmina Galliae nōn sunt altiōra quam flūmina Italiae. 11. Fīlius altior est quam pater. 12. Fīlia est pulchrior mātre. 13. Rōma, fēlicissima urbs totīus terrae.

122. 1. Humbler soldiers; of the most difficult approach; in the more beautiful valley. 2. By the rougher road; of the bravest soldiers; to the happiest legion. 3. The flowers of the woods are most beautiful. 4. The mountains of Gaul are higher than the mountains of Italy. 5. The sailor is humbler than the soldier. 6. The roads in the valley are very beautiful.

Lesson 20

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, Continued

123. The following adjectives vary the stem in comparison.

bonus, *good*	**melior,** *better*	**optimus,** *best*
malus, *bad*	**pēior,** *worse*	**pessimus,** *worst*
magnus, *great*	**māior,** *greater*	**maximus,** *greatest*
parvus, *small*	**minor,** *smaller*	**minimus,** *smallest*
multus, *much*	**plūs,** *more*	**plurimus,** *most*

124. The positive of the following adjectives derived from prepositions have a positive only in special cases.

exterus, *outside*	**exterior,** *outer*	**extrēmus, extimus,** *outermost*
īnferus, *below*	**īnferior,** *lower*	**īnfimus, īmus,** *lowest*
posterus, *following*	**posterior,** *later*	**postrēmus,** *last*; **postumus,** *late-born*
superus, *above*	**superior,** *higher*	**suprēmus, summus** *highest*

125. The following adjectives lack the positive entirely.

cıterior, *on this side*	**citimus,** *nearest*
dēterior, *worse*	**dēterrimus,** *worst*
interior, *inner*	**intimus,** *inmost*
ōcior, *swifter*	**ōcissimus,** *swiftest*
prior, *former*	**prīmus,** *first*
propior, *nearer*	**proximus,** *nearest, next*
ulterior, *farther*	**ultimus,** *farthest*

126. VOCABULARY

Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., *Allobroges,* a Gallic tribe.
altitūdō, inis, f., *depth, height.*
Avāricum, ī, n., *Avaricum,* a Gallic town.
cīvis, is, m., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*
Genava, ae, f., *Geneva,* a town of the Allobroges.
laetitia, ae, f., *joy, gladness.*
patria, ae, f., *native country.*
templum, ī, n., *temple.*
ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

EXERCISES

127. 1. Meliōra castra, maximum oppidum, via pēior. 2. Laetitiā māiōre, ventī minōres, mīlitēs optimī. 3. Summus mōns, in oppidīs proximīs, summa virtūs. 4. Ventī ōcissimi agrōs vastant. 5. Laetitia cīvium est maior quam laetitia mīlitum. 6. Genava est optimum oppidum Allobrogum. 7. Collis proximus est altior et asperior. 8. Equitēs minimō perīculō dīmicant. 9. Ducēs Gallōrum maximās cōpiās parant. 10. In prīmā aciē sunt mīlitēs fortissimī. 11. Altitūdō flūminum Italiae nōn est maxima. 12. Maximā virtūte oppidum ultimum oppugnant.

128. 1. Of the last legion; the highest mountains; to the first soldiers. 2. Of the swiftest messengers; in the nearest towns; the lowest mountain.

3. The outer wall; from the higher place; with the least joy. 4. The first cohort fights with the greatest valor. 5. The swiftest messengers of the Romans tell about the battle. 6. A legion is larger than a cohort.

REVIEW

129. 1. Hostēs in nāve sunt multī. 2. Dux collem armīs occupat. 3. In turribus sunt multī mīlitēs. 4. Rōmānī ferōcēs victōriā altās turrīs oppugnant. 5. Multī portūs in Italiā sunt bonī. 6. Magna perniciēs est in aciē. 7. Aliōs equitēs in alterō cornū collocat. 8. Dē perniciē recentī exercitūs narrāmus. 9. Complūrēs hostēs sine timōre in conciliō commūnī dēlīberant. 10. Mīlitēs Italiae nōn sunt fortiōrēs quam mīlitēs Galliae. 11. Maximā virtūte oppidum proximum oppugnant.

Lesson 21

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

130. Adjectives of the first and second declensions form the adverb by dropping the ending of the genitive singular and adding **-ē.**

Adjective.	Adverb.
cārus, *dear.*	**cārē,** *dearly.*
miser, *wretched.*	**miserē,** *wretchedly.*
pulcher, *beautiful.*	**pulchrē,** *beautifully.*

131. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding **-ter** to the stem. Stems (chiefly participles) ending in **-nt** drop **-t** before adding **-ter.**

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb
ācer, *keen*	**ācri-**	**ācriter,** *keenly*
fortis, *brave*	**forti-**	**fortiter,** *bravely*
prūdēns, *wise*	**prūdent-**	**prūdenter,** *wisely*

132. In some adjectives the ablative singular serves as the adverb, in others the neuter accusative singular.

facilis, *easy*	**facile,** *easily*
multus, *much*	**multum,** *much*
prīmus, *first*	**prīmō,** *at first*

The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective. To form the superlative, change the final **-us** of the superlative of the adjective to **-ē.**

Adjective	Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
cārus	**cārē,** *dearly*	**cārius**	**cārissimē**
pulcher	**pulchrē,** *beautifully*	**pulchrius**	**pulcherrimē**
bonus	**bene,** *well*	**melius**	**optimē**
facilis	**facile,** *easily*	**facilius**	**facillimē**
audāx	**audācter,** *boldly*	**audācius**	**audācissimē**

133. Certain adverbs are peculiar in comparison.

magnopere, *greatly*		**magis**	**maximē**
multum, *much*		**plūs**	**plūrimum**
nōn multum / **parum**	*little*	**minus**	**minimē**
saepe, *often*		**saepius**	**saepissimē**
prope, *near*		**propius**	**proximē**
diū, *long*		**diūtius**	**diūtissimē**

134. VOCABULARY

ācriter, *sharply, fiercely.*
audācter, *courageously.*
cārus, a, um, *dear.*
cogitō, *I think.*
dēfensio, ōnis, f., *defense.*
diū, adv., *a long time.*
fortiter, *bravely.*
fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
impetus, ūs, m., *onset, attack.*
magis, *more, rather;* comparative of **magnopere.**
magnopere, *greatly, earnestly.*
maximē, *especially;* superlative of **magnopere.**
miser, a, um, *wretched, unfortunate.*
parum, adv., *little.*
perturbō, *I agitate, disturb.*
prope, adv., *near.*
prūdens, entis, *skilled, wise.*
pugnō, *I fight.*
saltō, *I dance.*
tardō, *I retard, check.*

EXERCISES

135. 1. Miserē, fortiter, prīmo, cārius, optimē, facillimē. 2. Diūtissimē, propius, saepissimē, maximē, pēius. 3. Minus bene, minimē facile,

ācerrime, audācter. 4. Mīlitēs Rōmānī ācriter et audācter dīmicant. 5. Oppidum diū et fortiter oppugnant. 6. Agricolae magis dē agrīs ferācibus quam dē proeliīs cogitant. 7. Gallī impetum Rōmānōrum fortiter tardant. 8. Fīliae consulis flōrēs silvae maximē amant. 9. Timor perniciēī exercitum magnopere perturbat. 10. Nautae minus fortiter pugnant.

136. 1. Bravely; more wretchedly; less easily. 2. Most fiercely; most courageously; most easily. 3. The sailor's daughter dances very beautifully. 4. The Belgians fight more bravely than the Helvetians. 5. The soldiers are thinking more of flight than of the attack. 6. The strong defense of the town greatly retards the attack. 7. They consult very wisely about the defense of the camp.

Lesson 22

NUMERALS

137. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes.

1. Cardinals, answering the question, How many?
2. Ordinals, answering the question, In what order?
3. Distributives, answering the question, How many at a time?

138. The student should memorize thoroughly the following Cardinals and Ordinals, but should simply read the Distributives.

The declension of numerals will be treated in a later lesson (24).

Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives
1. **ūnus,** *one*	**prīmus,** *first*	**singulī,** *one each*
2. **duo**	**secundus**	**bīnī**
3. **trēs**	**tertius**	**ternī, trīnī**
4. **quattuor**	**quārtus**	**quaternī**
5. **quīnque**	**quīntus**	**quīnī**
6. **sex**	**sextus**	**sēnī**
7. **septem**	**septimus**	**septēnī**
8. **octo**	**octāvus**	**octōnī**
9. **novem**	**nonus**	**novēnī**
10. **decem**	**decimus**	**dēnī**
11. **ūndecim**	**undecimus**	**ūndēnī**
12. **duodecim**	**duodecimus**	**duodēnī**
13. **tredecim**	**tertius decimus**	**ternī dēnī**
14. **quattuordecim**	**quārtus decimus**	**quaternī dēnī**
15. **quindecim**	**quīntus decimus**	**quīnī dēnī**

16. **sēdecim**	**sextus decimus**	**sēnī dēnī**
17. **septendecim**	**septimus decimus**	**septēnī dēnī**
18. **duodēvīginti**	**duodēvīcēsimus**	**duodēvīcēnī**
19. **ūndēvīginti**	**ūndēvīcēsimus**	**ūndēvīcēnī**
20. **vīgintī**	**vīcēsimus**	**vīcēnī**

139. VOCABULARY

annus, ī, m., *year.*
certāmen, inis, n., *contest, strife.*
facile, *easily.*
mensis, is, m., *a month.*
poēma, ătis, n., *a composition in verse, a poem.*

EXERCISES

140. 1. Duo nūntiī dē certāmine bene narrant. 2. Duodecim mensēs sunt in annō. 3. Trēs mīlitēs magnā audāciā aggerem oppugnant. 4. Caesar trēs impetūs Gallōrum facile tardat. 5. Quīndecim equitēs agrōs agricolārum vexant.

141. 1. Eighteen horsemen retard the attack of the enemy. 2. Ten soldiers are in the road. 3. The many trees of the forest greatly delight the children. 4. The ten islands in the river are very beautiful places. 5. The two consuls do not like the fears of the soldiers.

Lesson 23

NUMERALS, Continued

142. Memorize thoroughly the following Cardinals and Ordinals but simply read the Distributives.

Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives
21. **vīgintī ūnus**	**vīcēsimus prīmus**	**vīcēnī singulī**
ūnus et vīgintī	**ūnus et vīcēsimus**	**singulī et vīcēnī**
22-27. are formed just as 21.		
28. **duodētrīgintā**	**duodētrīcēsimus**	**duodētrīcēnī**
29. **ūndētrīgintā**	**ūndētrīcēsimus**	**undētrīcēnī**
30. **trīgintā**	**trīcēsīmus**	**trīcēnī**
40. **quadrāgintā**	**quadrāgēsimus**	**quadrāgēnī**
50. **quīnquāgintā**	**quīnquāgēsimus**	**quīnquāgēnī**
60. **sexāgintā**	**sexāgēsimus**	**sexāgēnī**

70.	**septuāgintā**	**septuāgēsimus**	**septuāgēnī**
80.	**octōgintā**	**octōgēsimus**	**octōgēnī**
90.	**nōnāgintā**	**nōnāgēsimus**	**nōnāgēnī**
100.	**centum**	**centēsimus**	**centēnī**
101.	**centum ūnus** **centum et ūnus**	**centēsimus prīmus**	**centēnī singulī**
200.	**ducentī**	**ducentēsimus**	**ducēnī**
300.	**trecentī**	**trecentēsimus**	**trecēnī**
400.	**quadringentī**	**quadringentēsimus**	**quadringēnī**
500.	**quīngentī**	**quīngentēsimus**	**quīngēnī**
600.	**sescentī**	**sescentesīmus**	**sescēnī**
700.	**septingentī**	**septingentēsimus**	**septingēnī**
800.	**octingentī**	**octingentēsimus**	**octingēnī**
900.	**nōngentī**	**nōngentēsimus**	**nōngēnī**
1000.	**mille**	**mīllēsimus**	**singula mīllia**
100,000.	**centum mīllia**	**centiēs mīllēsimus**	**centēna mīllia**

143. VOCABULARY

clāmō, *I call, cry out.*
clāmor, ōris, m., *loud cry, noise.*
error, ōris, m., *wandering, mistake.*
forum, ī, n., *market place.*
īnsto, *I press on.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*

EXERCISES

144. 1. Multī clāmōrēs ē castrīs clāmant. 2. In forō sunt duodētrīginta militēs. 3. Trīginta cohortēs semper īnstant. 4. Optimī mīlitēs dē secundō impetū dēlīberant. 5. Mīles tertius decimus in aciē est altissimus. 6. Mīlle hostēs in silvā īnstant.

145. 1. Ten horsemen alone check the first attack. 2. Twenty-two soldiers are in the market place. 3. The leader demands a third attack. 4. Thirty-eight Gauls disturb the town. 5. A thousand cries call out in the night.

Lesson 24

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

146. Of the Cardinals only **ūnus, duo, trēs,** the hundreds above one hundred, and **mīlle** when used as a noun, are declined.

For the declension of **ūnus** see Lesson 16.

Duo, *two,* and **trēs,** *three,* are declined as follows:

Nom.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**
Gen.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**
Dat.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**
Acc.	**duōs, duo**	**duās**	**duo**
Abl.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**

Nom.	**trēs**	**tria**
Gen.	**trium**	**trium**
Dat.	**tribus**	**tribus**
Acc.	**trēs (trīs)**	**tria**
Abl.	**tribus**	**tribus**

147. The Cardinals from four to ten, and all the tens from ten to one hundred are indeclinable. Hundreds are declined like the plural of **bonus.**

148. **Mīlle** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a noun (followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated) and is declined. Thus, **mīlle hominēs,** *a thousand men;* **duo mīlia hominum,** *two thousand men* (literally, *two thousand of men*).

	Plural
Nom.	**mīlia**
Gen.	**mīlium**
Dat.	**mīlibus**
Acc.	**mīlia**
Abl.	**mīlibus**

149. **VOCABULARY**

advocō, *I call* or *summon to.*
cēlō, *I keep secret, conceal.*
conditor, ōris, m., *builder, founder.*
disturbō, *I throw into disorder, disturb.*
iam, adv., *now.*
messis, is, f., *harvest.*
prodigium, iī, n., *unusual sign, foreboding.*
probus, a, um, *good, honest, virtuous.*

EXERCISES

150. 1. Duōrum prodigiōrum, cum tribus fīliīs, ducentīs equitibus. 2. Mīlle equitēs, tria mīlia hominum, cum duōbus cohortibus. 3. In tribus oppidīs, duo prodigia, tria nōmina. 4. Caesar duās legiōnēs iam

advocat. 5. Puella trēs flōrēs pulchrōs cēlat. 6. Trecentī hominēs sunt in oppidō. 7. Gallī trēs turrēs magnō impetū oppugnant. 8. Messis in agrīs Rōmānōrum est maxima. 9. Duo sunt conditōrēs urbis Rōmae. 10. Trēs hominēs probī auxilium populī Rōmānī implōrant.

151. 1. To three soldiers; in two towns; with one lieutenant. 2. For three thousand men; from a thousand women; in two thousand cities. 3. Three thousand cavalry; with two hundred soldiers; of one cohort. 4. Caesar summons two thousand horsemen to the town. 5. The two founders of the city are very great men. 6. More than one prodigy disturbs the Roman people. 7. The three legions retard the attack of the many thousand Gauls. 8. Three hundred horsemen are ravaging the harvest in the fields.

Lesson 25

PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns

152. The Personal Pronouns of the first and second persons are declined as follows:

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	**ego,** *I*	**tū,** *you*	**nōs,** *we*	**vōs,** *you*
Gen.	**meī**	**tuī**	**nostrum, nostrī,**	**vestrum, vestrī**
Dat.	**mihi, mī**	**tibi**	**nōbis**	**vōbis**
Acc.	**mē**	**tē**	**nōs**	**vōs**
Abl.	**mē**	**tē**	**nōbis**	**vōbis**

153. The personal pronoun of the third person is **is,** *he;* **ea,** *she;* **id,** *it.* For the declension, see Lesson 28.

154. VOCABULARY

amīcē, *in a friendly way.*
culpō, *I blame.*
Dumnorīx, igis, m., *Dumnorix, a leader of the Haedui.*
epistula, ae, f., *letter.*
fructus, ūs, m., *fruit* (especially of trees).
frustrā, adv., in *vain.*
grātus, a, um, *pleasing, welcome.*
imperātor, ōris, m., *commander.*
inter, prep, with acc., *among, between.*
iūdicō, *I judge, adjudge.*

memoria, ae, f., *memory, recollection.*
officium, ī, n., *duty.*
praestō, *I perform.*
probō, *I approve.*
quoque, *also,* always follows word it modifies.
sollicitō, *I rouse, instigate.*
verbum, ī, n., *word.*

EXERCISES

155. Mihi, tibi, nōs, vōs. 2. Mē, tē, nōbis, vōbis. 3. Ego, nostrum, tu, vestrum. 4. Mī, meī, tuī, nostrī. 5. Ducēs nōs culpant. 6. Tē probāmus. 7. Imperātor mē et tē ācriter accūsat. 8. Mē quoque sollicitās. 9. Memoria tuī mihi est grāta. 10. Verba Galbae in epistulā tibi nōn sunt grāta. 11. Vōs militēs frustrā sollicitātis. 12. Nōs officia semper praestāmus. 13. Fructūs agrōrum agricolīs sunt grātī.

156. 1. We; us; you; to us. 2. You (acc. sing.); to you; me; to me. 3. To you (plu.); of us; of you (sing.); of you (plu.). 4. The soldier calls the men to us. 5. The letter of Dumnorix is not pleasing to you and to me. 6. He gives you many duties. 7. The generals rouse us in vain.

Lesson 26

PRONOUNS, Continued

Reflexive Pronouns

157. Reflexive Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand. Thus in "I see myself," "myself" is a reflexive pronoun referring to the subject "I."

For the first and second persons of the Reflexive Pronouns, the ordinary Personal Pronouns are used.

Only the third person has a special form, and is declined as follows:

Gen. **suī,** *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
Dat. **sibi,** *to himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
Acc. **sē** or **sēsē,** *himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
Abl. **sē** or **sēsē,** *with himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

The Reflexive Pronoun of the third person serves for all genders and for both numbers.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

158. Possessive Adjectives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions. Thus,

First Person

Singular, **meus, -a, -um,** *my.*
Plural, **noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our.*

Second Person

Singular, **tuus, -a, -um,** *thy, your* (of one person).
Plural, **vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your* (of more than one).

Third Person

Sing. and Plu., **suus, -a, -um,** *his, her, its, their.*

Suus is always reflexive as in **māter liberōs suōs amat,** *the mother loves her children.* Where not reflexive, *his, her, its* are regularly expressed by the genitive singular of **is,** *i. e.*, **eius;** and *their,* by the genitive plural, **eōrum, eārum.**

Possessive Pronouns exist in Latin only when Possessive Adjectives are used substantively.

est meum, *it is mine.*

159. VOCABULARY

calamitas, ātis, f., *misfortune, calamity.*
fortitūdo, inis, f., *strength, bravery.*
gravis, e, *heavy, grievous, serious.*
metus, ūs, m., *fear, dread.*
opus, eris, n., *work, labor.*
sēditio, ōnis, f., *uprising, revolt.*
sonitus, ūs, m., *noise, sound.*
suāvis, e, *sweet, pleasant, agreeable.*

EXERCISES

160. 1. Suī, sē, sibi, sēsē. 2. Calamitas mea, metus vester, officiōrum vestrōrum. 3. Pater meus, māter nostra, fīlia tua. 4. Omnēs mīlitēs bonī officia sua praestant. 5. Lēgātus tuum gladium mihi dōnat. 6. Puer patrem suum ad sē vocat. 7. Tu tua opera semper probās. 8. Metus noster imperātōrem sollicitat. 9. Rōmānī suīs armīs fortiter dīmicant. 10. Sēditio mīlitum nostrōrum est gravis. 11. Gallī cum fortitūdine et virtūte nōn semper pugnant. 12. Sonitus sēditiōnis nostrōrum est maximus.

161. 1. To himself; to themselves; from herself. 2. My horse, your daughter; our children; your (plu.) misfortune. 3. The father calls the boys to him (= himself). 4. Your leader gives us many duties. 5. The commander praises his men. 6. Your daughter is calling me. 7. The sound of the revolt does not disturb our king.

Lesson 27

PRONOUNS, Continued

Demonstrative Pronouns

162. Demonstrative Pronouns point out an object as here or there, or as previously mentioned. They usually precede the noun they modify. They are, **hīc,** *this;* **ille, iste,** *that;* **is,** *this* or *that;* **īdem,** *the same.*

hic, *this*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**hīc**	**haec**	**hōc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**hūius**	**hūius**	**hūius**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hōc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

Ille, *that*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**
Gen.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

Iste, *that, that of yours,* is declined like **ille.**

163. VOCABULARY

agmen, inis, n., *army* (on the march).
causa, ae, f., *cause, condition, reason.*
foedus, eris, n., *league, treaty, compact.*
ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly.*
lux, lūcis, m., *light.*
opīniō, ōnis, f., *opinion, expectation.*
salūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*
tempestās, ātis, f., *weather, storm.*

EXERCISES

164. 1. Hōc agmen, hae causae, hūius opīniōnis. 2. Huic causae, in hāc tempestāte, hārum opīniōnum. 3. In istō exercitū, illōrum mīlitum, istīus agminis. 4. Illa foedera, ille lux, istīus salūtis. 5. Causa hūius exercitūs nōn est bona. 6. Caesar illōs mīlitēs ignāvōs ad sē vocat. 7. Haec urbs est pulcherrima Italiae. 8. Istī ducēs opīniōnēs suās rēgī nostrō narrant. 9. Illa tempestās erat gravissima. 10. Salūs patriae vestrae istī imperātōrī est cārissima. 11. Multa officia huic hominī praestāmus. 12. Mīlitēs, ista officia exercitūs nōn amātis.

165. 1. That storm; these battles; of that opinion (of yours). 2. By those treaties; for this reason; in this light. 3. This soldier; of these men; for those horsemen. 4. Two cohorts of this legion are cowardly. 5. The robbers of that forest are very bad. 6. On those mountains are very tall trees. 7. With the swiftest soldiers he attacks those towers. 8. The rivers of that country are not very deep.

Lesson 28

PRONOUNS, Continued

166. Demonstrative Pronouns, continued.

Is, *this* or *that; he, she, it.*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī** or **iī**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**eius**	**eius**	**eius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs** or **iīs**	**eīs** or **iīs**	**eīs** or **iīs**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs** or **iīs**	**eīs** or **iīs**	**eīs** or **iīs**

Idem, *the same*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**	**eīdem** **iīdem** **īdem**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīsdem** **iīsdem** **īsdem**	**eīsdem** **iīsdem** **īsdem**	**eīsdem** **iīsdem** **īsdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**eīsdem**	**eīsdem**	**eīsdem**

167. VOCABULARY

acūmen, inis, n., *keenness.*
arduus, a, um, *steep, difficult.*
celeritās, ātis, f., *swiftness.*
contrōversia, ae, f., *dispute.*
facultās, ātis, f., *abundance, supply.*
ignāvia, ae, f., *cowardice.*
labor, ōris, m., *labor.*
locus, ī, m., *place, spot.*
mīrus, a, um, *wonderful, marvellous.*
oppidānus, ī, m., *inhabitant of a town, townsman.*

EXERCISES

168. 1. Eius labōris, eīdem oppidānī, eiusdem contrōversiae. 2. Idem acūmen, eādem celeritāte, in eōdem locō. 3. Eārundem causārum, eīsdem corōnīs, eīdem hominī. 4. Eius nūntiī celeritās est maxima. 5. Eius nōmen est Galba. 6. Oppidānī eius oppidī nōn sunt ignāvī. 7. Contrōversia gravis dē eīs rēbus est inter eum et oppidānum. 8. Facultās magna frūmentī est in eōdem oppidō. 9. Eōsdem equitēs eōrum virtūte laudās. 10. Eōs ad sē vocat. 11. Eīs dē ignāviā oppidānōrum narrās. 12. Dux suōs peditēs eōrum ignāviā vituperat.

169. 1. The same man; to the same women; of the same army. 2. Concerning the same causes; that camp; in this army. 3. Of these townsmen; the same places; for the same reason. 4. The people of this country avoid the dangers of war. 5. This general does not praise the cowardice of his soldiers. 6. The keenness of this boy's mind is wonderful. 7. The larger camp is in the same place. 8. You praise them; he blames her; they call him.

Lesson 29

PRONOUNS, Continued

The Intensive Pronoun

170. The Intensive Pronoun is **ipse.** It gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its exact translations vary. Thus, **puer ipse,** *the boy himself;* **femina ipsa,** *the woman herself;* **dōnum ipsum,** *the gift itself;* **urbēs ipsae,** *the cities themselves.*

Ipse, *self.*

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**
Gen.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**

Plural

Nom.	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
Gen.	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Acc.	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
Abl.	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

171. The Relative Pronoun is **quī,** *who, which,* and is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cūius**	**cūius**	**cūius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

172. The Interrogative Pronouns are **quis,** *who?* **quid,** *what?* They are declined as follows:

Singular

	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	**quis**	**quid**
Gen.	**cūius**	**cūius**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**
Acc.	**quem**	**quid**
Abl.	**quō**	**quō**

The plural of the interrogative is the same as that of the relative.

The Interrogative Adjective **quī, quae, quod,** *what? what kind of?* is declined exactly as the Relative Pronoun.

RULE OF SYNTAX

173. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands.

pallium quō amictus est, *the cloak with which he was covered.*
oppida quae oppugnāmus, *the towns which we attack.*

174. VOCABULARY

appellō, *I name, call.*
armō, *I arm.*
cāsus, us, m., *chance, accident.*
errō, *I err, am mistaken.*
festinō, *I hasten, hurry.*
firmitās, ātis, f., *firmness, strength.*
fugō, *I put to flight.*
hīberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*
intereā, *in the meanwhile.*
prō, prep. with abl., *before, for.*

EXERCISES

175. 1. Ducis ipsīus, hominēs ipsōs, ipsa rēgīna. 2. Quod oppidum? Quī lēgātus? Quae puella? 3. Quōrum hībernōrum? Cūius urbis? Cui mīlitī? 4. Fēminae quās laudās. Agricola cūius puerum amās. 5. Ad urbem festinat quam Rōmam appellās. 6. Dux ipse dē virtūte mīlitum quī pugnant narrat. 7. Hominēs quī sunt in oppidō armat. 8. Rēx mīlitēs laudāt quī impetum hostium tardant. 9. Imperātor deditiōne castrōrum omnēs culpat, quōs laudās. 10. Quis virtūtem et firmitātem nōn amat? 11. Cīvēs ipsī illōs latrōnes intereā fugant. 12. Castra nōn sunt magna quae nostrī mīlitēs oppugnant. 13. Quis vestrum salūtem populī nostrī implōrat? 14. Duās cohortēs quās maximē amat in cornū dextrō collocat. 15. Prīnceps ipse est ignāvus et perīcula bellī vitat.

176. 1. The armies themselves; by accident itself; of the generals themselves. 2. What winter quarters? What man? What thing? 3. The island in which the flowers are. The building which is in the forest. 4. Soldiers who fight for the fatherland. In what place is the army? 5. In the meantime they fight the enemy's cavalry which is in the fields. 6. He calls the men who are in the town. 7. What enemy are they putting to flight?

Lesson 30

PRONOUNS, Continued

Indefinite Pronouns

177. The principal Indefinite Pronouns are **quis,** *anyone* (noun), and **quī,** *any* (adjective). These are declined respectively like the Interrogative and Relative Pronoun.

178. The compounds of the Indefinites **quis** and **quī** are as follows:

Substantives

M. and F.	N.
aliquis, *some one*	**aliquid,** *something*
quisquam, *anyone*	**quidquam,** *anything*
quisque	**quidque,** *each, everything*
quīdam, quaedam,	**quiddam,** *a certain person* or *thing*

Adjectives

M.	F.	N.
aliquī	**aliqua**	**aliquod,** *some*
quisque	**quaeque**	**quodque,** *each, every.*
quīdam	**quaedam**	**quoddam,** *a certain*

In the compounded Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined, e. g., **alicūius, cūiusquam,** etc.

Aliquī has **aliqua** in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter.

In the declension of **quidam, m** is changed to **n** before **d;** as **quendam, quandam, quōrundam, quārundam.**

179. VOCABULARY

interitus, ūs, m., *ruin, destruction.*
laudābilis, e, *praiseworthy, laudable.*
praeda, ae, f., *booty.*
pretiōsus, a, um, *valuable, precious.*
sī, *if.*
sperō, *I hope, hope for.*
superbus, a, um, *haughty, proud.*
vicissitūdo, inis, f., *change.*

EXERCISES

180. 1. Hominibus quibusdam, lēgātō alicui. 2. Fēmina aliqua, in oppidō quōdam. 3. Cuique puerō, praedae alicūius. 4. Rēgum

quōrundam, rēgīnae cūiusdam. 5. Alicui, quidquam, cūiusque, quōrundam. 6. Cohortēs quaedam iam sunt in hībernīs. 7. Ducēs aliquī sunt superbī. 8. Sī quis victōriam spērat, errat. 9. Caesar lēgātōs cūiusque cohortis ad sē vocat. 10. Quīdam sunt superbissimī. 11. Ille ager est terra pretiōsa. 12. Mīlitēs quī perīcula bellī nōn vītant sunt laudābilēs. 13. Vicissitūdinēs bellī sunt multae et celerēs. 14. Aliquī interitum exercitūs nostrī sperant. 15. Aliqua in castrīs imperātor nōn amat.

181. 1. Some men; anyone; each legion; a certain cohort. 2. To every general; in certain towns; in each camp. 3. Of every army; concerning some booty; because of some things. 4. The booty which is in the camp is valuable. 5. Some commanders praise certain legions. 6. The proud soldiers harass each town. 7. A certain leader of the Gauls checks the onset of the Romans. 8. The general blames some men who avoid the dangers of battle.

REVIEW

182. 1. Mīlitēs ācerrimē et audācter pugnant. 2. Duodecim nūntiī dē perniciē bene narrant. 3. Ducentī equitēs septem vīcōs vāstant. 4. Mīlle Rōmānī cum duōbus mīlibus Gallōrum dīmicant. 5. Ego tē accūsō. 6. Dux suō gladiō pugnat. 7. In hōc proeliō mīlitēs nostrī fortiter pugnant. 8. Eīdem equitēs hunc laudant. 9. Dux eīs, quī fortiter oppugnant, praedam dōnat. 10. Cohortēs quaedam perīcula bellī vītant.

Lesson 31

CONJUGATION

183. The inflection of the verb is called Conjugation. There are four conjugations, distinguished by the first vowel of the ending of the Present Infinitive Active. Thus

Conjugation	Infinitive Ending	Distinguishing Vowel
I	**-āre**	**ā**
II	**-ēre**	**ē**
III	**-ĕre**	**ĕ**
IV	**-īre**	**ī**

By the inflection of the verb is expressed Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

184. There are two voices, Active and Passive. The Active Voice shows the subject as acting or being; thus, **amō,** *I love;* **sum,** *I am.*

The Passive Voice shows the subject as acted upon; thus **laudāmur,** *we are praised.*

185. There are three Moods—Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative.

(a) The Indicative Mood states a fact, or inquires about a fact. Thus, **moneō,** *I advise;* **quid monēs,** *what do you advise?*

(b) For the force of the Subjunctive Mood, see p. 153.

(c) The Imperative Mood is used in commands, entreaties, etc.

186. There are six Tenses—Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect, which correspond respectively to the English Present, Past, Future, Present, Perfect, Past Perfect, Future Perfect.

The Subjunctive, however, lacks the Future and Future Perfect, and the Imperative uses only the Present and Future.

187. There are two numbers—Singular and Plural.

188. There are three persons—First, Second, and Third.

189. These make up the forms of the three moods, or the so-called Finite Verb. Besides these forms there are the Infinitives, the Supines, and the Gerund, which are verbal nouns, and the Participles (including the Gerundive), which are verbal adjectives.

190. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs. Verbs that take a direct object are Transitive Verbs; thus **eōs amāmus,** *we love them.* Other verbs are Intransitive; thus **manēmus,** *we remain.*

191. The Principal Parts of a verb are:

(1) The First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active.

(2) The Present Infinitive Active.

(3) The First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active.

(4) The Nominative Singular Masculine of the Perfect Passive Participle.

The Principal Parts of a verb are so called because from them the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

CONJUGATION OF SUM

192. The conjugation of the irregular verb **sum** is given first because it enters into the conjugation of other verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Fut. Partic.
sum	**esse**	**fuī**	**futūrus**

The Perfect Participle of **sum** is wanting.

Indicative

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
sum, *I am,*	**sumus,** *we are,*
es, *thou art, you are,*	**estis,** *you are,*
est, *he is;*	**sunt,** *they are.*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was,*	**erāmus,** *we were,*
erās, *thou wast, you were,*	**erātis,** *you were,*
erat, *he was;*	**erant,** *they were.*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be,*	**erimus,** *we shall be,*
eris, *thou wilt be, you will be,*	**eritis,** *you will be,*
erit, *he will be;*	**erunt,** *they will be.*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, I was,*	**fuimus,** *we have been, we were,*
fuistī, *thou hast been, thou wast, you were,*	**fuistis,** *you have been, you were.*
fuit, *he has been, he was;*	**fuērunt, fuēre,** *they have been, they were.*

PLUPERFECT

fueram, *I had been,*	**fuerāmus,** *we had been,*
fuerās, *thou hadst been, you had been,*	**fuerātis,** *you had been,*
fuerat, *he had been;*	**fuerant,** *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been,*	**fuerimus,** *we shall have been,*
fueris, *thou wilt (you will) have been,*	**fueritis,** *you will have been,*
fuerit, *he will have been;*	**fuerint,** *they will have been.*

193. VOCABULARY

armenta, ōrum, n. pl., *herds, cattle.*
arō, *I plough.*
hasta, ae, f., *spear.*
hostia, ae, f., *victim.*
iustus, a, um, *just, lawful, true.*
lex, lēgis, f., *law.*

pāgus, ī, m., *district, village.*
perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual.*
piger, ra, rum, *unwilling, lazy.*
sacrificium, ī, n., *sacrifice.*
scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*
sub, *under,* prep. with abl.

EXERCISES

194. 1. Sunt, erātis, erō, fuit. 2. Es, erāmus, erunt, fuī. 3. Estis, eram, erit, fuerātis. 4. Fuerant, fueritis, sumus, eris. 5. Fuerimus, fuerat, fuēre, erō. 6. Armenta Helvētiōrum erant in agrīs. 7. Illī lēgātī imperātōris Rōmānī fuērunt fortissimī. 8. Quis fuit dux Sēquanōrum? 9. Ubi eris? 10. In sacrificiō erunt hostiae multae. 11. Lēgēs Rōmānae semper fuērunt iustae. 12. Hasta hūius mīlitis erat sub scūtō. 13. Vōs, agricolae, quī agrōs nōn arātis, estis pigrī. 14. In pāgīs Helvētiōrum fuerant multī hostēs. 15. Ubi fuerātis? 16. Vōs omnēs in oppidīs Belgārum fuistis. 17. Sub arbore sunt flōrēs pulcherrimī.

195. 1. I am; he was; you have been; we had been. 2. You are; they will be; he has been; he will have been. 3. She had been; I shall be; we shall have been; thou art. 4. These soldiers have been very brave. 5. The leader has been cowardly. 6. Under the shield was the spear. 7. You, fellow citizens, will be just. 8. He had been in the great country of the Gauls. 9. The sick soldiers will be in the buildings.

Lesson 32

196. CONJUGATION OF SUM, Continued

Subjunctive

PRESENT

Singular	Plural
sim, *may I be,*[1]	**sīmus,** *let us be,*
sīs, *mayst thou be,*	**sītis,** *be ye, may you be,*
sit, *let him be, may he be;*	**sint,** *let them be.*

IMPERFECT

essem, *I should be,*[1]	**essēmus,** *we should be,*
essēs, *thou wouldst be,*	**essētis,** *you would be,*
esset, *he would be;*	**essent,** *they would be.*

[1] The many possible meanings of the Subjunctive will be taken up under Syntax. Only the most common meanings will be given in this paradigm.

PERFECT

fu**erim,** *I may have been,*[1]	fu**erīmus,** *we may have been,*
fu**erīs,** *thou mayst have been,*	fu**erītis,** *you may have been,*
fu**erit,** *he may have been;*	fu**erint,** *they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT

fui**ssem,** *I should have been,*	fui**ssēmus,** *we should have been,*
fui**ssēs,** *thou wouldst have been,*	fui**ssētis,** *you would have been,*
fui**sset,** *he would have been;*	fui**ssent,** *they would have been.*

Imperative

Pres. es, *be thou,*	**este,** *be ye.*
Fut. est**ō,** *thou shalt be,*	est**ōte,** *ye shall be,*
est**ō,** *he shall be;*	**suntō,** *they shall be.*

Infinitive	**Participle**
Pres. **esse,** *to be.*	
Perf. fui**sse,** *to have been.*	
Fut. fu**tūrus esse,**[2] *to be about to be.*	*Fut.* fu**tūrus,**[3] *about to be.*

197. VOCABULARY

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship.*
ante, *before, in front of,* prep. with acc.
brevis, e, *short, brief.*
captīvus, a, um, *captive;* **captīvus** (as noun), *a captive.*
contentus, a, um, *contented.*
firmus, a, um, *steadfast, strong.*
fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench.*
fugitīvus, a, um, *fugitive;* **fugitīvus** (as a noun), *a fugitive.*
ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*
inopia, ae, f., *lack, need.*
nōndum, *not yet.*
quondam, *formerly.*

---

[1] The many possible meanings of the Subjunctive will be taken up under Syntax. Only the most common meanings will be given in this paradigm.

[2] The form **fore** is often used for **futūrus esse.**

[3] **Futūrus** is declined like **bonus.**

EXERCISES

198. 1. Sim, essem, fuerim, fuissem. 2. Sīs, essētis, fuerītis, fuissent. 3. Este, fuerīmus, essent, sint. 4. Fuissēs, suntō, fuissēmus, fuerint. 5. Sītis, fuerit, fuissem, futūrus. 6. Sim contentus. 7. Essēs firmus. 8. Fuissent captīvī. 9. Fābula puerī erat longior. 10. Ante oppidum sunt agrī ferācissimī. 11. Nōs, quī līberī sumus, sīmus contentī. 12. Fuisset inopia magna rērum omnium. 13. Ille quondam erat amīcus meus. 14. In illīs fossīs fuerint multī hominēs aegrī. 15. Plūrimae amīcitiae sunt brevēs. 16. Laudāmus mīlitēs quī omnēs fuērunt fortēs. 17. In hōc oppidō Belgārum Caesar nōndum fuerat.

199. 1. May I be; let us be; they would be; they may have been. 2. Thou wouldst have been; he may have been; he would be. 3. You would be; be thou; let her be; let him be. 4. Mayst thou be; we should be; we should have been; I should have been. 5. Let them be brave. 6. Soldiers, be steadfast, and there will be victory. 7. There may have been many men in the first trench. 8. The friendship between Gauls and Romans was brief.

Lesson 33

200. **FIRST (a-) CONJUGATION**

amō, *I love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
amō	**amāre**	**amāvi**	**amātus**[1]

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
am**ō,** *I love,*	am**āmus,** *we love,*
am**ās,** *you love,*	am**ātis,** *you love,*
am**at,** *he loves;*	am**ant,** *they love.*

[1] Many verbs in English taken from Latin are derived from the Perfect participial stem; e. g., *animate* from **animātus (animāre),** *effect* from **effectus (efficere),** *erect* from **ērectus (ērigere),** *select* from **selectus (sēligere),** etc.

IMPERFECT

amābam, *I was loving, I loved,*	**amābāmus,** *we were loving, etc.,*
amābās, *you were loving, etc.,*	**amābātis,** *you were loving, etc.,*
amābat, *he was loving, etc.;*	**amābant,** *they were loving, etc.*

FUTURE

amābō, *I shall love,*	**amābimus,** *we shall love,*
amābis, *you will love,*	**amābitis,** *you will love,*
amābit, *he will love;*	**amābunt,** *they will love.*

PERFECT

amāv**ī,** *I have loved, I loved,*	amāv**imus,** *we have loved, we loved,*
amāv**istī,** *you have loved, you loved,*	amāv**istis,** *you have loved, you loved,*
amāv**it,** *he has loved, he loved;*	amāv**ērunt, -ēre,** *they have loved, they loved.*

PLUPERFECT

amāv**eram,** *I had loved,*	amāv**erāmus,** *we had loved,*
amāv**erās,** *you had loved,*	amāv**erātis,** *you had loved,*
amāv**erat,** *he had loved;*	amāv**erant,** *they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT

amāv**erō,** *I shall have loved,*	amāv**erimus,** *we shall have loved,*
amāv**eris,** *you will have loved,*	amāv**eritis,** *you will have loved,*
amāv**erit,** *he will have loved;*	amāv**erint,** *they will have loved*

Notice that the Present, Imperfect, and Future are formed by adding the proper endings to the present stem, **am-.**

Similarly the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect are formed by adding the proper endings to the perfect stem, **amav-.**

201. VOCABULARY

aedificō, āre, āvi, ātus, *build, erect.*
āra, ae, f., *altar.*
consilium, ī, n., *deliberation, plan.*
invidia, ae, f., *envy.*
labōrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *work, suffer.*
medius, a, um, *middle, middle of.*
migrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *go, move, wander.*
multitūdo, dinis, f., *multitude.*

mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *change, alter.*
nunc, *now,* temporal adv.
ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pray, ask, request.*
pedes, itis, m., *foot-soldier,* in pl., *infantry.*
planitiēs, ēī, f., *plain.*
putō, āre, āvī, ātus, *believe, think, consider.*
pugna, ae, f., *fight, battle.*
recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *refuse.*
vir, virī, m., *a man.*

EXERCISES

202. 1. Aedificābimus, ōrātis, labōrābunt putāvērunt. 2. Migrāvimus, mūtāverant, recūsāverimus, putāvisti. 3. Laudāvit, superābo, collocāveras, dīmicābam. 4. Aedificāverō, collocāveris, occupābitis, superābant. 5. Populus hūius oppidī āram aedificābat. 6. Aggerem ex duābus partibus oppugnābant. 7. Mīlitēs trium legiōnum oppida Helvetiōrum occupāvērunt. 8. Multī hominēs in castrīs minōribus labōrābunt. 9. Pācem et amīcitiam Gallōrum Caesar recūsābit. 10. Omnēs vōs victōriam ōrābitis. 11. Dē omnibus rēbus nos iūdicābimus. 12. Multitūdō virōrum et fēminārum ā Galliā in Italiam migrāverat. 13. Peditēs in illō locō collocāvimus. 14. Timor magnus virōs quī erant in castrīs occupāvit. 15. Omnēs equitēs quī in illā pugnā dīmicāvērunt laudābitis.

203. 1. You will work; I shall summon you; you will have suffered; we have moved. 2. We shall pray; he was considering; he has refused; I was praising him. 3. The soldiers have fought bravely in this battle. 4. The lieutenants had now gotten ready many beasts of burden. 5. Because of envy you have changed your plans. 6. We have stationed three cohorts in the same place. 7. Many foot-soldiers will be in the plain.

Lesson 34

FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

204. Active Voice of **amō,** continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

Singular	Plural
amem, *may I love,*	**amēmus,** *let us love,*
amēs, *love, may you love,*	**amētis,** *love, may you love,*
amet, *let him love, may he love;*	**ament,** *let them love, may they love.*

IMPERFECT

amārem, *I should love,*	**amārēmus,** *we should love,*
amārēs, *you would love,*	**amārētis,** *you would love,*
amāret, *he would love;*	**amārent,** *they would love.*

PERFECT

amāverim	**amāverīmus**
amāverīs	**amāverītis**
amāverit	**amāverint**

PLUPERFECT

amāvissem, *I should have loved,*	**amāvissēmus,** *we should have loved,*
amāvissēs, *you would have loved,*	**amāvissētis,** *you would have loved,*
amāvisset, *he would have loved;*	**amāvissent,** *they would have loved.*

Notice that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive are formed from the Present Stem.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are formed from the Perfect Stem.

205. VOCABULARY

Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus, a king of the Germans.*
bellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *make war, carry on war.*
classis, is, f., *fleet.*
cupidus, a, um, *fond, eager.*
ē, ex, *from, out of,* prep. with abl., **ex** is to be used before vowels or **h.**
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe.*
hōra, ae, f., *hour.*
intrā, *within,* prep. with acc.
ita, *thus, so.*
iugum, ī, n., *yoke, ridge* (of mountains).
lītus, oris, n., *shore.*
temptō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attempt, make trial of.*
turba, ae, f., *crowd, multitude.*
turbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *embarrass, disturb.*

EXERCISES

206. 1. Putet, migrāret, ōrāvissem, labōrārent. 2. Bellārēs, temptārēmus, turbāvissent, recūsārētis. 3. Laudent, dīmicāvissētis, parāvissēs, sperārem. 4. Bellēmus fortiter. 5. Victōriam semper sperārēs. 6. Sine perīculō ex illō oppidō migrāvissent. 7. Populum illōrum oppidōrum turbābant. 8. Intrā ūnam hōram exercitum Gallōrum superāvisset. 9.

Cum duābus classibus lītus occupārēmus. 10. Hunc collem occupāre temptēmus.

207. 1. Let us praise the leader. 2. We should have prayed for peace. 3. They tried to storm the town with three cohorts. 4. Let them attempt the attack! 5. Within a few days they would have prepared a large army. 6. Let him himself who is so desirous occupy the shore! 7. Let Ariovistus himself implore aid!

Lesson 35

FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

208. Active Voice of **amō**, continued.

Imperative Mood

Pres.	amā, *love thou;*	amāte, *love ye.*
Fut.	amātō, *thou shalt love,*	amātōte, *ye shall love.*
	amātō, *he shall love;*	amantō, *they shall love.*

Infinitive		**Participle**	
Pres.	amāre, *to love.*	*Pres.*	amāns,[1] *loving.* (Gen. amantis)
Perf.	amāvisse, *to have loved.*		
Fut.	amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*	*Fut.*	amātūrus, *about to love.*

Gerund		**Supine**	
Gen.	amandī, *of loving.*		
Dat.	amandō, *for loving.*		
Acc.	amandum, *loving.*	*Acc.*	amātum, *to love.*
Abl.	amandō, *by loving.*	*Abl.*	amātū, *to love, be loved.*

Notice that the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, Present Participle, and the Gerund are formed from the Present Stem.

The Perfect Infinitive is formed from the Perfect Stem.

The Future Participle, Future Infinitive, and the Supine are formed from the Participial Stem **amāt-**.

209. **VOCABULARY**

arx, arcis, f., *castle, citadel.*
avis, is, f., *bird.*

---

[1] For the declension of **amans,** see **cliens,** Lesson 12.

dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātus, *long for, desire.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
infestus, a, um, *hostile, dangerous.*
placō, āre, āvī, ātus, *reconcile, pacify.*
properō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten, hurry.*
unda, ae, f., *wave.*
vadum, ī, n., *ford.*
vindex, īcis, m., *avenger, defender.*

EXERCISES

210. 1. Putā, dēsīderent, bellantō, parāvisse. 2. Properandō, laudandī, temptātūrus, dīmicātūrus esse. 3. Turbāns, aedificantēs, mūtātōte, pugnāvisse. 4. Vōs quī cupidī bellandī estis arma parāte! 5. Timōre mortis perīcula bellī vītāvērunt. 6. Caesar vadum illīus flūminis temptātūrus est. 7. Lēgātus mīlitēs infestōs quī sunt in mediā plānitiē placātūrus est. 8. Vōs, hominēs fortissimī, ad proelium properātūrī estis. 9. Mors ducis mīlitēs ad maximum impetum incitābat. 10. Victōriam spērantēs melius pugnāvissent.

211. 1. To have hastened; to be about to reconcile; about to contend. 2. By praising; for attempting; to embarrass. 3. May he long for his country. 4. Soldiers, fight bravely for the fatherland. 5. We are all about to attack the citadel. 6. All Romans are not fond of fighting. 7. Who would have implored aid of that man?

Lesson 36

FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

212. Passive Voice of **amō.**

amor, *I am loved.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
amor	**amārī**	**amātus sum**

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

I am loved.

Singular	Plural
am**or**	am**āmur**
am**āris**	am**āminī**
am**ātur**	am**antur**

IMPERFECT

I was loved.

amābar	**amābāmur**
amābāris, *or* **-re**	**amābāminī**
amābātur	**amābantur**

FUTURE

I shall be loved.

amābor	**amābimur**
amāberis, *or* **-re**	**amābiminī**
amābitur	**amābuntur**

PERFECT

I have been loved or *I was loved.*

amātus (-a, -um) sum	**amātī (-ae, -a) sumus**
amātus es	**amātī estis**
amātus est	**amātī sunt**

PLUPERFECT

I had been loved.

amātus eram	**amātī erāmus**
amātus erās	**amātī erātis**
amātus erat	**amātī erant**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been loved.

amātus erō	**amātī erimus**
amātus eris	**amātī eritis**
amātus erit	**amātī erunt**

213. VOCABULARY

anteā, *previously, before.*
gaudium, ī, n., *joy.*
honōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *respect, honor.*
initium, ī, n., *beginning.*
mendācium, i, n., *lie.*
nēcō, āre, āvī, ātus, *murder, kill.*
ōtium, ī, n., *leisure, idleness.*
portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry, bring, convey.*
posteā, *afterwards, later on.*
sententia, ae, f., *opinion.*
tum, *at that time, then.*
vitium, ī, n., *fault, vice, mistake.*

EXERCISES

214. 1. Honōrātur, portantur, culpāris, laudāmur. 2. Excitābar, superābantur, convocābāmini, parātī sunt. 3. Vocātus erās, laudātī erimus, perīcula vītāta erant. 4. Mendācia et vitia nōn laudantur. 5. Sententia ducis honōrātur. 6. Tum magnae classēs summā celeritāte parābantur. 7. Duo lēgātī et multī mīlitēs nēcātī sunt. 8. Gaudium magnum erat in oppidō cūius exercitus fuit victor. 9. Omnia reliqua posteā portābis. 10. Eum anteā semper laudābas, et nunc nōn laudātur. 11. Tū cum omnibus fortibus laudābāris.

215. 1. They are honored; they have been killed; we are being carried. 2. It will be attacked; you will be praised; they have been made ready. 3. It will have been seized; we were overcome; you all have been summoned. 4. The town which you love is being attacked. 5. At the beginning of the attack many were not killed. 6. That hill together with the citadel will be occupied. 7. The opinion of the general had not been approved.

Lesson 37

FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

216. Passive Voice of **amŏ,** continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I be loved, let him be loved.

Singular	Plural
amer	**amēmur**
amēris, *or* **-re**	**amēminī**
amētur	**amentur**

IMPERFECT

I should be loved, he would be loved.

amārer	**amārēmur**
amārēris, *or* **-re**	**amārēminī**
amārētur	**amārentur**

PERFECT

amātus sim	**amātī sīmus**
amātus sīs	**amātī sītis**
amātus sit	**amātī sint**

PLUPERFECT

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.

amātus essem	**amātī essēmus**
amātus essēs	**amātī essētis**
amātus esset	**amātī essent**

Notice that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Passive are formed with the Present Stem.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive use the Participial Stem.

Imperative Mood

Pres.	**amāre,** *be thou loved,*	**amāminī,** *be ye loved,*
Fut.	**amātor,** *thou shalt be loved,*	
	amātor, *he shall be loved;*	**amantor,** *they shall be loved.*

Infinitive		**Participle**	
Pres.	**amārī,** *to be loved,*		
Perf.	**amātus esse,** *to have been loved,*	*Perf.*	**amātus,** *loved, having been loved,*
Fut.	**amātum īrī,** *to be about to be loved;*	*Gerundive*	**amandus,** *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

Notice that the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, and the Gerundive belong to the Present Stem.

The remaining forms are made with the Participial Stem.

The Perfect Stem is not used in forming any tense of the Passive Voice.

RULE OF SYNTAX

217. The ablative with **ā** or **ab** is used with a passive verb to denote the one who does the act.

filia amātur ā mātre, *the daughter is loved by the mother.*

218. VOCABULARY

castellum, ī, n., *fort.*
concordia, ae, f., *harmony, agreement.*
convocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call together.*
culpa, ae, f., *guilt, fault.*
dīligentia, ae, f., *diligence.*
discordia, ae, f., *disunion, discord.*
ēducō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bring up, educate.*
excitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *stir up, rouse.*

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *think, consider.*
exitium, ī, n., *destruction.*
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *take by storm.*
ferrum, ī, n., *iron, sword.*
propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*
statim, *at once, immediately.*
vix, *scarcely, with difficulty.*

EXERCISES

219. 1. Convocentur, laudēmur, honōrētur. 2. Excitātus esse, culpandus, parārī. 3. Exīstimārī, vocātus, superātus esset. 4. Amer, expugnārētur, excitārēris. 5. Cōpiae parentur. 6. Trēs cohortēs summā diligentiā parandae sunt. 7. Exitium hūius oppidī vītandum est. 8. Sine auxiliō nostrō castellum nōn expugnātum esset. 9. Hae legiōnēs ex hībernīs convocandae sunt. 10. Concordia in mīlitibus maximē est dēsīderanda. 11. Propter discordiam ducum mīlitēs nōn convocātī essent. 12. Maxima copia frūmentī statim parētur. 13. Intrā ūnam hōram classēs hostium superātae essent. 14. Caesar nōn dōnābit auxilium quod ā Gallīs implōrābātur.

220. 1. Let it be taken by storm; the soldiers should have been roused. 2. The citizens must be (=*are to be*) [called together at once. 3. Children must be brought up in the best way. 4. The destruction of this army should have been avoided. 5. Without us that citadel would have been seized with difficulty. 6. Without his aid you would have been easily overcome.

Lesson 38

SECOND (ē-) CONJUGATION

221. **moneō,** *I advise*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Part.
moneō	**monēre**	**monuī**	**monitus**

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE		IMPERFECT	
I advise		*I was advising,* or *I advised*	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
moneō	monēmus	monēbam	monēbāmus
monēs	monētis	monēbās	monēbātis
monet	monent	monēbat	monēbant

Future		Perfect	
I shall or *will advise*		*I have advised*, or *I advised*	
monēbō	monēbimus	monuī	monuimus
monēbis	monēbitis	monuistī	monuistis
monēbit	monēbunt	monuit	monuērunt, *or* ēre

Pluperfect		Future Perfect	
I had advised		*I shall* or *will have advised*	
monueram	monuerāmus	monuero	monuerimus
monuerās	monuerātis	monueris	monueritis
monuerat	monuerant	monuerit	monuerint

222. VOCABULARY

angustus, a, um, *narrow.*
dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, *owe;* with an infinitive, *ought.*
deus, ī, m., *god.*
fīnis, is, m., *end, boundary;* in pl. *territory.*
habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *have, possess.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
mīlitāris, e, *military.*
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move* (transitive).
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *keep off, keep away* (transitive).
signum, ī, n., sign, *standard.*
superbia, ae, f., *haughtiness, pride, insolence.*
sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, ——— *withstand.*
timeō, ēre, uī, ——— *fear.*
umbra, ae, f., *shadow.*
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see.*

EXERCISES

223. 1. Habēmus, manēbat, sustinuimus. 2. Dēbētis, monēbitis, mōvistī. 3. Prohibueram, timuerimus, vīderant. 4. Gallīs auxilium debēmus. 5. Nōs eōsdem amīcōs habēmus et habēbimus. 6. Impetum hostium sustinēre dēbent. 7. Magnum numerum equitum et peditum prohibuistis. 8. Castra ex eō locō iam mōverant. 9. Locum quem vidēs hostēs occupāvērunt. 10. Illī ducēs maximam superbiam habent. 11. Hostēs nōn timēbitis. 12. Equitēs signa mīlitāria iam vident. 13. In fīnēs Helvetiōrum nōndum castra movēbit.

224. 1. They will remain; he did not fear; he had seen you. 2. They have withstood the attack; he fears him; he had kept the enemy off.

3. A god does not fear men. 4. You ought to move the standard from that place. 5. The soldiers will remain on the hill which you see. 6. Who did not see the citadel which the enemy was holding?

Lesson 39

SECOND (ē-) CONJUGATION, Continued

225. Active Voice of **moneō,** continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I advise, let him advise

Singular	Plural
moneam	**moneāmus**
moneās	**moneātis**
moneat	**moneant**

IMPERFECT

I should advise, he would advise

monērem	**monērēmus**
monērēs	**monērētis**
monēret	**monērent**

PERFECT

I may have advised, or *I have advised*

monuerim	**monuerīmus**
monuerīs	**monuerītis**
monuerit	**monuerint**

PLUPERFECT

I should have advised, he would have advised

monuissem	**monuissēmus**
monuissēs	**monuissētis**
monuisset	**monuissent**

Imperative

Pres.	**monē,** *advise thou,*	**monēte,** *advise ye,*
Fut.	**monētō,** *thou shalt advise,*	**monētōte,** *ye shall advise,*
	monētō, *he shall advise;*	**monentō,** *they shall advise.*

Infinitive	Participle
Pres. mon**ēre**, *to advise,*	*Pres.* mon**ēns**, *advising,*
Perf. monu**isse**, *to have advised,*	
Fut. monit**ūrus esse**, *to be about to advise;*	*Fut.* monit**ūrus**, *about to advise.*

Gerund	Supine
Gen. mon**endī**, *of advising,*	
Dat. mon**endō**, *for advising,*	
Acc. mon**endum**, *advising,*	*Acc.* monit**um**, *to advise,*
Abl. mon**endō**, *by advising;*	*Abl.* monit**ū**, *to advise, be advised.*

Note that the various moods and tenses of **moneō** are formed as in the First Conjugation. This is likewise true of the Third and Fourth Conjugations.

226.

aqua, ae, f., *water.*
doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, *teach, show.*
doleō, ēre, uī, itus, *feel sorry, be pained, grieve.*
flōreō, ēre, uī, ——— *flourish, bloom, thrive.*
ludus, ī, m., *play, game.*
morbus, ī, m., *illness, sickness, disease.*
praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, *grant, give, offer.*
prūdentia, ae, f., *prudence.*
servō, āre, āvī, ātus, *keep, save, preserve.*
stultitia, ae, f., *folly.*

EXERCISES

227. 1. Maneāmus, monērem, monuisset. 2. Videātis, timērētis, docuissent. 3. Vidēte, doluisse, praebitūrus esse. 4. Servandō, dolitūrus, praebitum. 5. Nōs omnēs līberōs doceāmus. 6. In eō oppidō pulcherrimō flōruissēs. 7. Mīlitēs, impetum hostium prohibēte! 8. Ludōs in forō praebeant. 9. In castrīs nōn erat aqua. 10. Interitū exercitūs fēminae et līberī doluissent. 11. Deī nostrī morbōs prohibērent.

228. 1. Let them teach; let the flowers flourish; advise. 2. I should have remained; you would have feared; by remaining. 3. We ought to offer games. 4. We should have kept off the attack of the enemy. 5. Let them move the camp from one place to another. 6. They should have had the same friends and enemies. 7. Who would fear soldiers who are sick with disease!

Lesson 40

SECOND (ē-) CONJUGATION, Continued

229. Passive Voice of **moneō.**

moneor, *I am advised*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
moneor	**monērī**	**monitus sum**

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

I am advised

mone**or**	mon**ēmur**
mon**ēris,** *or* **re**	mon**ēminī**
mon**ētur**	mon**entur**

IMPERFECT

I was advised

mon**ēbar**	mon**ēbāmur**
mon**ēbāris,** *or* **re**	mon**ēbāminī**
mon**ēbātur**	mon**ēbantur**

FUTURE

I shall or *will be advised*

mon**ēbor**	mon**ēbimur**
mon**ēberis,** *or* **re**	mon**ēbiminī**
mon**ēbitur**	mon**ēbuntur**

PERFECT

I have been advised, I was advised

monitus	monitī **sumus**
monitus **es**	monitī **estis**
monitus **est**	monitī **sunt**

PLUPERFECT

I had been advised

monitus **eram**	monitī **erāmus**
monitus **erās**	monitī **erātis**
monitus **erat**	monitī **erant**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall or *will have been advised*

monitus **erō**	monitī **erimus**
monitus **eris**	monitī **eritis**
monitus **erit**	monitī **erunt**

230. **VOCABULARY**

admodum, *quite, very much.*
aequus, a, um, *level.*
apertus, a, um, *open.*
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase.*
barbarus, a, um, *barbarian,* as a noun, m., *a barbarian.*
celeriter, *quickly.*
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *fill up.*
contineō, ēre, uī, ——— *confine.*
imber, imbris, m., *rainstorm.*
perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *terrify.*
teneō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold.*

EXERCISES

231. 1. Augētur, continēbantur, perterrentur. 2. Perterritī erant, complēbātur, praebitum est. 3. Docēbāris, prohibitus erās, sustinēberis. 4. Vīsae erant, perterritī erunt, vīsa est. 5. Barbarī exercitū Caesaris perterritī sunt. 6. Morbī in castrīs maximē augēbantur. 7. Mīlitēs in castellīs imbribus continentur. 8. Loca aequa et aperta ā Rōmānīs tenēbantur. 9. Incolae hūius oppidī multīs proeliīs perterritī erant. 10. Timōrēs servōrum augēbuntur. 11. Fossae in agrō statim complēbuntur. 12. In illā silvā perterrēbāmini.

232. 1. We are seen; he was advised; they have been frightened. 2. You will be taught; we had been kept off; the camp was moved. 3. They will be shown; you were kept off; it had been sustained. 4. The trenches of the enemy have already been filled by our soldiers. 5. The onset of the barbarians will be checked. 6. The general's resources were increased. 7. In the forest of that island you will be greatly terrified.

REVIEW

233. 1. In illō oppidō septem legiōnēs erunt. 2. Vōs omnēs in Italiā fuistis. 3. Multī hominēs, quī erunt in castrīs minōribus, labōrābunt. 4. Ex illō oppidō sine perīculō migrāvissēmus. 5. Adventum tuum omnēs exspectābunt. 6. Tum magnae classēs summā celeritāte parābuntur.

7. Copiae summā dīligentiā parandae sunt. 8. Hostēs signa mīlitāria nōn vidēbant. 9. In hōc oppidō, quod Rōmānī occupāvērunt, maneāmus. 10. Mīlitēs in castrīs imbribus continēbantur.

Lesson 41

SECOND (-ē) CONJUGATION, Continued

234. Passive Voice of **moneō**, continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I be advised, let him be advised

Singular	Plural
mone**ar**	mone**āmur**
mone**āris**, *or* **re**	mone**āminī**
mone**ātur**	mone**antur**

IMPERFECT

I should be advised, he would be advised

monē**rer**	monē**rēmur**
monē**rēris**, *or* **re**	monē**rēminī**
monē**rētur**	monē**rentur**

PERFECT

I may have been advised, or *I have been advised*

monitus **sim**	monitī **sīmus**
monitus **sīs**	monitī **sītis**
monitus **sit**	monitī **sint**

PLUPERFECT

I should have been advised, he would have been advised

monitus **essem**	monitī **essēmus**
monitus **essēs**	monitī **essētis**
monitus **esset**	monitī **essent**

Imperative

Pres. monē**re**, *be thou advised,* monē**minī**, *be ye advised,*

Fut. monē**tor**, *thou shalt be advised,*

monē**tor**, *he shall be advised;* mone**ntor**, *they shall be advised.*

Infinitive	Participle
Pres. monērī, *to be advised,*	
Perf. monitus esse, *to have been advised,*	*Perf.* monitus, *advised,*
Fut. monitum īrī, *to be about to be advised;*	*Ger.* monendus, *to be advised, deserving to be advised.*

235. VOCABULARY

aestās, ātis, f., *summer.*
aestus, ūs, m., *heat.*
aetas, ātis, f., *life, age.*
deleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *destroy.*
forma, ae, f., *appearance.*
fulgor, ōris, m., *brightness, lightning.*
īra, ae, f., *anger.*
lateō, ēre, uī, ——— *lurk, be hidden.*
lūceō, ēre, lūxī, ——— *shine.*
nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*
suspīcio, ōnis, f., *suspicion.*
videor, ērī, vīsus sum (passive of **video**), *be seen, seem.*

EXERCISES

236. 1. Lateātur, monērēris, complētum esse. 2. Augērī, mōtus sit, dēlētum esset. 3. Prohibitum īrī, timendus, continērentur. 4. Doctus essēs, delērētur, latuissēmus. 5. Illī latrōnēs latēre videntur. 6. Ducēs statim moneantur. 7. Suspīciōnēs imperātōris multīs rēbus auctae essent. 8. Hōc oppidum ā Rōmānīs dēlētum esse vidētur. 9. Timōrēs nostrī propter illud nōn augērentur. 10. In Italiā aestus aestātis est maximus. 11. Lūna magnō fulgōre lūcet. 12. Propter haec īra ducis aucta esset. 13. Loca aperta ā equitibus tenta essent.

237. 1. They seem to be hiding; let the place be filled up. 2. To have been destroyed; it would have been destroyed; to seem. 3. They would be terrified; we should be kept off. 4. The fears of the people would have been greatly increased. 5. The ditch seems to have been filled up by boys. 6. You would have been pained greatly by many things. 7. The attack of the barbarians should be withstood bravely.

Lesson 42

THIRD (CONSONANT) CONJUGATION

238. **regō,** *I rule*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Part
regō	**regere**	**rēxī**	**rēctus**

Active Voice

Indicative Mood

Present Tense		Imperfect	
I rule		*I was ruling*, or *I ruled*	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
regō	**regimus**	**regēbam**	**regēbāmus**
regis	**regitis**	**regēbās**	**regēbātis**
regit	**regunt**	**regēbat**	**regēbant**

Future		Perfect	
I shall or *will rule*		*I have ruled*, or *I ruled*	
regam	**regēmus**	**rēxī**	**rēximus**
regēs	**regētis**	**rēxistī**	**rēxistis**
reget	**regent**	**rēxit**	**rēxērunt,** *or* **ēre**

Pluperfect		Future Perfect	
I had ruled		*I shall* or *will have ruled*	
rēxeram	**rēxerāmus**	**rēxerō**	**rēxerimus**
rēxerās	**rēxerātis**	**rēxeris**	**rēxeritis**
rēxerat	**rēxerant**	**rēxerit**	**rēxerint**

Subjunctive Mood

May I rule, let him rule

Present

Singular	Plural
regam	**regāmus**
regās	**regātis**
regat	**regant**

IMPERFECT

I should rule, he would rule

regerem	**regerēmus**
regerēs	**regerētis**
regeret	**regerent**

PERFECT

I may have ruled, or *I have ruled*

rēxerim	**rēxerīmus**
rēxerīs	**rēxerītis**
rēxerit	**rēxerint**

PLUPERFECT

I should have ruled, he would have ruled

rēxissem	**rēxissēmus**
rēxissēs	**rēxissētis**
rēxisset	**rēxissent**

Imperative

Pres.	rege, *rule thou;*	regite, *rule ye,*
Fut.	regitō, *thou shalt rule,*	regitōte, *ye shall rule,*
	regito, *he shall rule;*	reguntō, *they shall rule.*

Infinitive	**Participle**
Pres. regere, *to rule,*	*Pres.* regēns, *ruling,*
Perf. rēxisse, *to have ruled,*	
Fut. rēctūrus esse, *to be about to rule;*	*Fut.* rēctūrus, *about to rule.*

Gerund	**Supine**
Gen. regendī, *of ruling,*	
Dat. regendō, *for ruling,*	
Acc. regendum, *ruling,*	*Acc.* rēctum, *to rule,*
Abl. regendō, *by ruling;*	*Abl.* rēctū, *to rule, be ruled.*

239. VOCABULARY

auxilia, ōrum, n. pl. *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*
dīvitiae, ārum, f. plu. *riches, wealth.*
fāma, ae, f., *report, reputation, fame.*
grātia, ae, f., *grace, favor, thanks.*
Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*
in, *into,* prep. with acc.

īnstruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus, *draw up, arrange.*
iter, itineris, n., *journey, march.*
litterae, ārum, f., *a letter.*
mitto, ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*
omnīnō, adv., *altogether; in all.*
pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, establish.*
praesidium, ī, n., *garrison.*
prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead back.*
relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus, *leave behind.*

EXERCISES

240. 1. Regēbant, īnstruēbat, mittunt. 2. Pōnent, redūximus, relinquēns. 3. Posuimus, rēxerat, pōnant. 4. Mīsisset, posuissēs, relictūrus. 5. Redūcite, regendō, pōneret. 6. Litterās ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 7. Lēgātī, mīlitēs in prōvinciam redūcite. 8. Auxilia in Hispāniam Citeriōrem (*i. e.*, Spain north of the river Ebro) statim mittet. 9. Cōnsulēs legiōnēs in mediā plānitiē īnstrūxērunt. 10. Erant omnīnō itinera duo inter montem et flūmen. 11. In eō locō auxilia relinquet. 12. In oppidō praesidium relīquisset. 13. Ad cōnsulēm auxilia redūxissēmus. 14. Lēgātōs ad senātum cum dīvitiīs mittant. 15. Hōc itinere ad rīpam flūminis mīlitēs redūcat.

241. 1. He was ruling; he arranged the troops; he will send a messenger. 2. Let him place the standard; we will lead back the auxiliaries. 3. We left them in the town; he would have ruled. 4. Let us send our thanks to that country. 5. We should leave both cavalry and foot-soldiers in the province. 6. By ruling well a king holds the favor of the people. 7. Consuls, send your legions into Spain at once. 8. The leader seems to have drawn his troops up in the open plain.

Lesson 43

THIRD (CONSONANT) CONJUGATION, Continued

242. Passive Voice of **regō.**

regor, *I am ruled*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
regor	**regī**	**rēctus sum**

Indicative Mood

Present Tense		Imperfect	
I am ruled		*I was ruled*	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
regor	**regimur**	**regēbar**	**regēbāmur**
regeris, *or* **re**	**regiminī**	**regēbāris,** *or* **re**	**regēbāminī**
regitur	**reguntur**	**regēbātur**	**regēbantur**

Future		Perfect	
I shall or *will be ruled*		*I have been ruled*, or *I was ruled*	
regar	**regēmur**	**rēctus sum**	**rēctī sumus**
regēris, *or* **re**	**regēminī**	**rēctus es**	**rēctī estis**
regētur	**regentur**	**rēctus est**	**rēctī sunt**

Pluperfect		Future Perfect	
I had been ruled		*I shall* or *will have been ruled*	
rēctus eram	**rēctī erāmus**	**rēctus erō**	**rēctī erimus**
rēctus erās	**rēctī erātis**	**rēctus eris**	**rēctī eritis**
rēctus erat	**rēctī erant**	**rēctus erīī**	**rēctī erunt**

243. **VOCABULARY**

committō, ere, mīsī, missus, *bring together;* with **proelium,** *join battle.*

cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *decide, determine.*

contendo, ere, tendī, tentum, *hurry, hasten.*

defendō, ere, fendī, fensus, *defend.*

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *carry on, perform;* with **bellum,** *wage.*

hīc, *here, at this place.*

ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace, infamy.*

parsīmōnia, ae, f., *economy.*

poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*

statua, ae, f., *statue.*

superior, ius, *higher.*

trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *hand over.*

EXERCISES

244. 1. Relinquor, dēfendētur, redūcēbar. 2. Gestum est, trāditum erat, positum erit. 3. Relinquēris, mittēbāmur, redūcēmini. 4. Mittēmur, bellum gerētur, reductī sunt. 5. Proelium statim committētur. 6. Intereā duo oppida fortiter dēfendēbantur. 7. Hīc proelium gestum

est quō omnis terra superāta est. 8. Rōmānī castellum dēfendere cōnstituērunt. 9. Statua parva virō trādita erat. 10. Poena erat maxima et iustissima. 11. In locīs superiōribus peditēs īnstruentur.

245. 1. Battle will be joined; he will hasten; hostages had been sent. 2. The citadel was defended; you will be led back; we will be left behind. 3. The sons of the leaders will be handed over as hostages. 4. They have decided to hasten to that town which is being bravely defended. 5. You with two cohorts will be left behind in the smaller camp. 6. Many wars have been waged bravely by the Roman people. 7. The generals had already decided to join battle. 8. The arms had been handed over by the enemy.

Lesson 44

THIRD (CONSONANT) CONJUGATION, Continued

246. Passive Voice of **regō**, continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I be ruled, let him be ruled

Singular	Plural
regar	**regāmur**
regāris, *or* **re**	**regāminī**
regātur	**regantur**

IMPERFECT

I should be ruled, he would be ruled

regerer	**regerēmur**
regerēris, *or* **re**	**regerēminī**
regerētur	**regerentur**

PERFECT

I may have been ruled, or *I have been ruled*

rēctus sim	**rēctī sīmus**
rēctus sīs	**rēctī sītis**
rēctus sit	**rēctī sint**

PLUPERFECT

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled

rēctus essem	**rēctī essēmus**
rēctus essēs	**rēctī essētis**
rēctus esset	**rēctī essent**

Imperative

Pres. **regere,** *be thou ruled,* **regiminī,** *be ye ruled,*
Fut. **regitor,** *thou shalt be ruled,*
regitor, *he shall be ruled;* **reguntor,** *they shall be ruled.*

Infinitive	**Participle**
Pres. **regī,** *to be ruled,*	
Perf. **rēctus esse,** *to have been ruled,*	*Perf.* **rēctus,** *ruled,*
Fut. **rēctum īrī,** *to be about to be ruled.*	*Ger.* **regendus,** *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.*

247. **VOCABULARY**

cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctus, *force, compel.*
contrā, *against,* prep. with acc.
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead away.*
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead.*
expedītus, a, um, *unencumbered, light-armed.*
incendō, ere, cendī, census, *set on fire.*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *fit out.*
mūnītiō, ōnis, f., *fortification.*
pigritia, ae, f., *sluggishness, laziness, idleness.*
quā, *where.*
spectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *behold, see.*

EXERCISES

248. 1. Deducātur, ductī essent, incensum esse. 2. Bellum gererētur, proelium commissum esset. 3. Relinquerēmur, coāctī essēmus, trāditī essētis. 4. Regendus, ductum īrī, relinquitor. 5. Nāvēs ā Caesare melius instrūctae essent. 6. Aedificia statim incensa essent. 7. Mīlitēs expedītī ad oppidum oppugnāndum mittantur. 8. Omnia relinquere, quā erant, coāctī essētis. 9. Caesar pigritiā mīlitum impetum relinquere coāctus est. 10. Trēs legiōnēs expedītae in Galliam contrā hostes ducantur. 11. In locīs superiōribus proelium commissum esset.

249. 1. Let the battle be joined; light-armed soldiers should have been sent. 2. You would not have been given over as hostages; wars would not be waged. 3. You would be forced to draw up the battle line. 4. Let the buildings, where the soldiers are, not be set on fire. 5. A garrison would have been left in the fortification. 6. Because of the disgrace of the army we should have been forced to lead the army away. 7. Let ten ships be fitted out at once with all things.

Lesson 45

FOURTH (ī-) CONJUGATION

250. **audiō,** *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
audiō	**audīre**	**audīvī**	**audītus**

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

I hear

Singular	Plural
audiō	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

IMPERFECT

I was hearing, or *I heard*

Singular	Plural
audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

FUTURE

I shall or *will hear*

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

PERFECT

I have heard, or *I heard*

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt, *or* ēre

PLUPERFECT

I had heard

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall or *will have heard*

audīverō	audīverĭmus
audīverĭs	audīverĭtis
audīverit	audīverint

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I hear, let him hear

Singular	Plural
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

IMPERFECT

I should hear, he would hear

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

PERFECT

I may have heard, or *I have heard*

audīverim	**audīverīmus**
audīverīs	**audīverītis**
audīverit	**audīverint**

PLUPERFECT

I should have heard, he would have heard

audīvissem	**audīvissēmus**
audīvissēs	**audīvissētis**
audīvisset	**audīvissent**

Imperative

Pres. **audī,** *hear thou,*	**audīte,** *hear ye,*
Fut. **audītō,** *thou shalt hear,*	**audītōte,** *ye shall hear,*
audītō, *he shall hear;*	**audiuntō,** *they shall hear.*

Infinitive	**Participle**
Pres. **audīre,** *to hear,*	*Pres.* **audiēns,** *hearing.*
Perf. **audīvisse,** *to have heard,*	
Fut. **audītūrus esse,** *to be about to hear;*	*Fut.* **audītūrus,** *about to hear*

Gerund	**Supine**
Gen. **audiendī,** *of hearing,*	
Dat. **audiendō,** *for hearing,*	
Acc. **audiendum,** *hearing,*	*Acc.* **audītum,** *to hear,*
Abl. **audiendō,** *by hearing;*	*Abl.* **audītū,** *to hear, be heard*

251. VOCABULARY

conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come together.*
eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*
ferē, *almost, about, practically.*
impediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus, *impede, hinder.*
litterae, f. pl., *literature.*
luxūria, ae, f., *extravagance, luxury.*
mora, ae, f., *delay.*
mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *fortify.*
musa, ae, f., *muse* (goddess).
occāsiō, ōnis, f., *occasion, opportunity.*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, *discover.*
talis, e, *such.*
tristitia, ae, f., *sadness, grief.*

undique, adv., *from all parts* or *sides.*
vallum, ī, n., *rampart, intrenchment.*
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*
vestīmentum, ī, n., *garment.*

EXERCISES

252. 1. Veniat, repperimus, mūnīvērunt. 2. Vēnerat, convēnisse, mūniendō. 3. Impediētis, venīte, mūnīverās. 4. Mūniēbātis, audīvissēmus, venīret. 5. Veniendī, impedīvissent, veniāmus. 6. Legiōnes morīs maximīs nōndum convēnērunt. 7. Ferē omnēs principēs ad concilium vēnissent. 8. Illōs nūntiōs quī eōdem convēnērunt audiāmus. 9. Gallī occāsiōnem nōn facile repperissent. 10. Talis mora mīlitēs Rōmānōs nōn impedīvisset. 11. Omnia castella omnibus rēbus statim mūnīte. 12. E lūxuriā maximā semper tristitia venit. 13. Castra vallō fossāque mūniant. 14. Vestīmenta cōnsulum Rōmānōrum sunt pulcherrima. 15. Reliquās legiōnēs quae imbribus impediuntur exspectēmus.

253. 1. They have fortified; he would have hindered; he discovers. 2. We were assembling; you will hear; let her come. 3. We should have found; he would come; by impeding. 4. The enemy came from all sides to the same place. 5. The muse of literature does not like riches and extravagance. 6. You would have found an opportunity easily in that place. 7. The cavalry will hinder the march of the enemy's army. 8. Let us listen to the report of the battle which the messenger is announcing.

Lesson 46

FOURTH (ī-) CONJUGATION, Continued

254. Passive Voice of **audiō.**

audior, *I am heard.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audior	**audīrī**	**audītus sum**

Indicative Mood

Present Tense		Imperfect	
I am heard		*I was heard*	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
audior	**audīmur**	**audiēbar**	**audiēbāmur**
audīris, *or* **re**	**audīminī**	**audiēbāris,** *or* **re**	**audiēbāminī**
audītur	**audiuntur**	**audiēbātur**	**audiēbantur**

Future		Perfect	
I shall or *will be heard*		*I have been heard*, or *I was heard*	
audiar	audiēmur	audītus sum	audītī sumus
audiēris, *or* re	audiēminī	audītus es	audītī estis
audiētur	audientur	audītus est	audītī sunt

Pluperfect		Future Perfect	
I had been heard		*I shall* or *will have been heard*	
audītus eram	audītī erāmus	audītus ero	audītī erimus
audītus erās	audītī erātis	audītus eris	audītī eritis
audītus erat	audītī erant	audītus erit	audītī erunt

Subjunctive Mood

Present

May I be heard, let him be heard

Singular	Plural
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris, *or* re	audiāminī
audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

I should be heard, he would be heard

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris, *or* re	audīrēminī
audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

I may have been heard, or *I have been heard*

audītus sim	audītī sīmus
audītus sīs	audītī sītis
audītus sit	audītī sint

Pluperfect

I should have been heard, he would have been heard

audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audītus esset	audītī essent

Imperative

Pres. audīre, *be thou heard,* audīminī, *be ye heard,*

Fut. audītor, *thou shalt be heard,*
audītor, *he shall be heard;* audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

Infinitive	Participle
Pres. audīrī, *to be heard,*	
Perf. audītus esse, *to have been heard,*	*Perf.* audītus, *heard,*
Fut. audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard;*	*Ger.* audiendus, *to be heard, deserving to be heard.*

255. VOCABULARY

angustiae, ārum, f. pl., *a narrow pass.*
augur, is, m. and f., *augur, soothsayer.*
circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *surround.*
comēs, comitis, m. and f., *companion comrade.*
extrā, prep. with acc., *outside, beyond.*
idōneus, a, um, *suitable.*
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *find, come upon.*
mox, *soon.*
nihil, indecl. n., *nothing.*
paene, *almost, nearly.*
praeco, ōnis, m., *crier, herald.*
prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run forward.*
pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust.*
refugium, ī, n., *refuge.*
regiō, ōnis, f., *region.*

EXERCISES

256. 1. Audītur, circumventum est, impedīmur. 2. Inveniēbātur, impedītus erat, inventus esse. 3. Urbs mūnīta erat, mūsa circumventa est, audītum īrī. 4. Reperiētur, circumventum esset, impediantur. 5. Invenīrētur, audiāmur, inventī essētis. 6. Locus idoneus mox inveniētur. 7. Comēs hūius puerī quem vidēs repertus est. 8. Castra maiōra magnīs operibus mūniēbantur. 9. Hostēs angustiīs in montibus impedientur. 10. Nihil dē augure audītum erat. 11. Paene omnēs lēgātī quī erant extrā castra prōcucurrērunt. 12. Oppidum in colle altō mūniendum est. 13. Castellum fossā et vallō mūniātur. 14. Refugium statim inventum esset. 15. In illā īnsulā ā barbarīs circumvenīrēris.

257. 1. Let us run forward; let us not be hindered; they are being heard. 2. It was surrounded· you were found; they had been heard. 3. It would be fortified; they would have been impeded; she had been found. 4. To be heard; having been found; to be about to be surrounded. 5. We were hindered especially by the narrow passes. 6. The Roman

legion would have been surrounded in the forest. 7. The heralds ran forward in the dust. 8. A suitable place in that region ought to be fortified.

Lesson 47

VERBS IN (-iō) OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

258. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the present indicative in **iō, ior,** like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth Conjugation, wherever those endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System.

Capiō, *I take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
capiō	**capere**	**cēpī**	**captus**

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
capiō, capis, capit;	**capimus, capitis, capiunt.**

IMPERFECT

capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;	**capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.**

FUTURE

capiam, -iēs, -iet;	**capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.**

PERFECT

cēpī, -istī, -it;	**cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt,** *or* **ēre.**

PLUPERFECT

cēperam, -erās, -erat;	**cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.**

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, -eris, -erit;	**cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.**

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

capiam, -iās, -iat;	**capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.**

IMPERFECT

caperem, -erēs, -eret; **caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.**

PERFECT

cēperim, -erīs, -erit; **cēperīmus, -erītis, -erint.**

PLUPERFECT

cēpissem, -issēs, -isset; **cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.**

Imperative Mood

Singular	Plural
Pres. **cape;**	**capite.**
Fut. **capitō,**	**capitōte,**
capitō;	**capiuntō.**

Infinitive	**Participle**
Pres. **capere**	*Pres.* **capiens**
Perf. **cēpisse**	
Fut. **captūrus esse**	*Fut.* **captūrus**

Gerund	**Supine**
Gen. **capiendī**	*Acc.* **captum**
Dat. **capiendō**	*Abl.* **captū**
Acc. **capiendum**	
Abl. **capiendō**	

259. VOCABULARY

accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *receive.*
capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *take, adopt, capture.*
carpō, ere, carpsī, carptus, *pluck, pick.*
certē, *surely.*
constantia, ae, f., *firmness, fortitude.*
contemnō, ere, contempsī, contemptum, *disregard, despise.*
dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *plunder.*
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do.*
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee.*
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *kill.*
iungō, ere, iunxī, iunctum, *join;* **foedus iungō,** *form an alliance;* **amīcitiam iungō,** *make friendship.*
lībertās, tātis, f., *liberty.*
maiōrēs, um, m. pl., *ancestors.*
mandātum, ī, n., *command, order.*

EXERCISES

260. 1. Accipit, capiēbat, fēcit. 2. Capiāmus, fugeret, fūgit. 3. Accipis, fūgistī, capiendō. 4. Cēpissēs, fugerēmus, captūrus. 5. Multōs flōrēs in silvā carpsit. 6. Cum Gallīs foedus iunxit. 7. Cum omnibus gentibus Galliae amīcitiam nōn iungit. 8. Caesar in hostēs rūrsus subitō impetum faciet. 9. Barbarī undique agrōs dīripuērunt. 10. Captīvī in castrīs fūgissent. 11. Maiōrēs nostrī lībertātem semper amābant et servābant. 12. Imperātor pācem contempsit et multōs interfēcit. 13. Ad mīlitēs nostrōs fugiāmus. 14. Mandāta hūius hominis contemnere dēbēmus. 15. Hostēs in silvam fūgissent. 16. Ex hōc oppidō magnam cōpiam frūmentī dīripuimus.

261. 1. Let us take; he was fleeing; they have received. 2. Let him take; he is fleeing; you are being received. 3. Let them plunder; you would have fled; she would take. 4. Let us form an alliance with many peoples. 5. The enemy would surely plunder the larger camp. 6. The Roman army has taken many captives. 7. We have received the commands of the leader. 8. She would have done many better things.

Lesson 48

VERBS IN (-iō) OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION, Continued

262. Passive Voice of **capiō.**

capior, *I am taken*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
capior	**capī**	**captus sum**

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
capior, caperis, capitur;	**capimur, capiminī, capiuntur.**

IMPERFECT

capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur;	**capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, iēbantur.**

FUTURE

capiar, iēris, -iētur;	**capiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur.**

PERFECT

captus sum, es, est;	**captī, sumus, estis, sunt.**

PLUPERFECT

captus eram, erās, erat; captī erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT

captus erō, eris, erit; captī erimus, eritis, erunt.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

Singular	Plural
capiar, -iāris, iātur;	**capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.**

IMPERFECT

caperer, erēris, -erētur; caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur.

PERFECT

captus sim, sīs, sit; captī sīmus, sītis, sint.

PLUPERFECT

captus essem, essēs, esset; captī essēmus, essētis, essent.

Imperative Mood

Pres.	**capere;**	**capiminī.**
Fut.	**capitor,**	
	capitor;	**capiuntor.**

Infinitive		**Participle**	
Pres.	**capī.**		
Perf.	**captus esse.**	*Perf.*	**captus.**
Fut.	**captum īri.**	*Ger.*	**capiendus.**

263. VOCABULARY

modestia, ae, f., *moderation, modesty.*
nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation, tribe.*
palūs, lūdis, f., *marsh.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
rūrsus, *again.*
sapientia, ae, f., *wisdom.*
transfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*
Tullia, ae, f., *Tullia,* a woman's name.

EXERCISES

264. 1. Dīripiuntur, caperis, acceptus est. 2. Interficiēbantur, accipiēbar, acciperis. 3. Captī essent, dīripuisse, capiar. 4. Acceptī erātis, interfectī essēmus, capiēmur. 5. In eō locō hostēs pontem fēcerant.

6. Mīlitēs subitō interfectī essent. 7. Transfugae rūrsus capientur. 8. Ex illō oppidō maximum numerum iūmentōrum dīripiēbāt. 9. Principēs multārum nātiōnum in palūdibus captī sunt. 10 Lībertās ā maiōribus nostrīs accepta est. 11. Omnēs transfugae interficī dēbent. 12. Tullia, fīlia rēgis, capta erat. 13. In eō flūmine pōns subitō factus esset. 14. Haec mandāta et nōn illa ā mīlitibus accepta sunt. 15. Aliud cōnsilium subitō capiātur.

265. 1. You were plundered; they had been captured; she will be received. 2. Let them be taken; they are being plundered; you will be killed. 3. We will be received; he would have been killed; let me be captured. 4. The deserters should have been killed. 5. Many women and children of the enemy have been captured. 6. The lieutenant's camp would have been plundered by the enemy. 7. The envoys of many kings are being received by the general. 8. Your commands were not received by us.

Lesson 49

DEPONENT VERBS

266. Certain verbs, called Deponent, have, in the main, Passive forms with Active meaning.

In addition to the passive forms, they have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participle, Gerund and Supine.

The Gerundive always, the Perfect Passive Participle sometimes, have Passive meanings. Thus **sequendus,** *to be followed;* **adeptus,** *having been attained.*

These forms of deponent verbs are regular in their formation, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are:

	I. Conjugation	
hortor	**hortārī**	**hortātus sum**
	II. Conjugation	
vereor	**verērī**	**veritus sum**
	III. Conjugation	
sequor	**sequī**	**secūtus sum**
	IV. Conjugation	
potior	**potīrī**	**potītus sum**
	III. Conjugation (in -ior)	
patior	**patī**	**passus sum**

Indicative Mood

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	III. (in -ior)
Pres.	**mīror**	**vereor**	**sequor**	**largior**	**patior**
	mīrāris	**verēris**	**sequeris**	**largīris**	**pateris**
	mīrātur	**verētur**	**sequitur**	**largītur**	**patitur**
	mīrāmur	**verēmur**	**sequimur**	**largīmur**	**patimur**
	mīrāminī	**verēminī**	**sequiminī**	**largīminī**	**patiminī**
	mīrantur	**verentur**	**sequuntur**	**largiuntur**	**patiuntur**
Impf.	**mīrābar**	**verēbar**	**sequēbar**	**largiēbar**	**patiēbar**
Fut.	**mīrābor**	**verēbor**	**sequar**	**largiar**	**patiar**
Perf.	**mīrātus sum**	**veritus sum**	**secūtus sum**	**largītus sum**	**passus sum**
Plup.	**mīrātus eram**	**veritus eram**	**secūtus eram**	**largītus eram**	**passus eram**
F. P.	**mīrātus erō**	**veritus erō**	**secūtus erō**	**largītus erō**	**passus erō**

Subjunctive

Pres.	**mīrer**	**verear**	**sequar**	**largiar**	**patiar**
Imp.	**mīrārer**	**verērer**	**sequerer**	**largīrer**	**paterer**
Perf.	**mīrātus sim**	**veritus sim**	**secūtus sim**	**largītus sim**	**passus sim**
Plup.	**mīrātus essem**	**veritus essem**	**secūtus essem**	**largītus essem**	**passus essem**

Imperative

Pres.	**mīrāre**	**verēre**	**sequere**	**largīre**	**patere**
Fut.	**mīrātor**	**verētor**	**sequitor**	**largītor**	**patitor**

Infinitive

Pres.	**mīrārī**	**verērī**	**sequī**	**largīrī**	**patī**
Perf.	**mīrātus esse**	**veritus esse**	**secūtus esse**	**largītus esse**	**passus esse**
Fut.	**mīrātūrus esse**	**veritūrus esse**	**secūtūrus esse**	**largītūrus esse**	**passūrus esse**

Participles

Pres.	**mīrāns**	**verēns**	**sequēns**	**largiēns**	**patiēns**
Fut.	**mīrātūrus**	**veritūrus**	**secūtūrus**	**largītūrus**	**passūrus**
Perf.	**mīrātus**	**veritus**	**secūtus**	**largītus**	**passus**
Ger.	**mīrandus**	**verendus**	**sequendus**	**largiendus**	**patiendus**

Gerund

mīrandī	**verendī**	**sequendī**	**largiendī**	**patiendī**
mīrandō, *etc.*	**verendō**, *etc.*	**sequendō**, *etc.*	**largiendō**, *etc.*	**patiendō**, *etc.*

Supine

mīrātum, -tū	**veritum, -tū**	**secūtum, -tū**	**largītum, -tū**	**passum, -sū**

267. **Vocabulary**

adorior, orīrī, ortus sum, *attack.*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare.*[1]
colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, *converse, confer.*
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *endeavor, attempt.*
ēgredior, ī, gressus sum, *march out.*
excidium, ī, n., *destruction.*
iam, adv., *now, already;* **non iam,** *no more, no longer.*
īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., *ambush, plot.*
moror, ārī, ātus sum, *tarry, delay.*
nēmō, m., *no one,* dat., **neminī,** acc. **nēminem;** gen. and abl. not used.
paulum, adv., *a little.*
proficīscor, ī, fectus sum, *set out.*
prōgredior, ī, gressus sum, *advance, go forward.*
resistō, ere, restitī, *resist.*
revertor, ī, reversus sum, *return.*
Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*

EXERCISES

268. 1. Adoriēmur, audēbit, adortus est. 2. Ausī sunt, morāmur, cōnābar. 3. Collocūtī erāmus, prōgressus es, colloquantur. 4. Morāta esset, ēgrederis, revertendō. 5. Profectī sumus, cōnēmur, revertāmur. 6. Nostrī paulum prōgressī revertēbantur. 7. Hostēs ex fīnibus suīs rūrsus profectī sunt. 8. Multī captīvī ē castrīs ēgredī cōnābantur. 9. Insidiās inter montem et flūmen verēbāmur. 10. Cōnsulēs dē salūte populī Rōmānī colloquēbantur. 11. Nēmō hostium resistere audēbit. 12. Propter hās causās longius morātī essēmus. 13. In hoc oppidum celeriter revertēris. 14. Equitēs magnō impetū agmen hostium adortī sunt. 15. Lēgātī de excidiō urbis colloquuntur.

269. 1. They were attacking; they dare; they had dared. 2. We were setting out; you will advance; he was trying. 3. We should have conferred; let us try; they marched out. 4. We shall try to attack the town. 5. No one dares to resist. 6. Having advanced a little, they greatly feared an ambush. 7. He speedily returned to the city.

---

[1] Some verbs, like **audeō** (i. e., **fidō, gaudeō, soleō**), have active forms in the Present System, but passive form elsewhere. These are called semi-deponent verbs.

Lesson 50

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

270. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, the Active and the Passive.

The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the forms of **sum,** and denotes an intended or future action.

Amātūrus sum, *I am about to love*

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Infinitive
Pres.	**amāturūs sum**	**amātūrus sim**	**amātūrus esse**
Imp.	**amātūrus eram**	**amātūrus essem**	
Fut.	**amātūrus erō**		
Perf.	**amātūrus fuī**	**amātūrus fuerim**	**amātūrus fuisse**
Plup.	**amātūrus fueram**	**amātūrus fuissem**	
F. P.	**amātūrus fuerō**		

The Passive is formed by combining the Gerundive with the forms of **sum,** and denotes necessity or duty.

Amandus sum, *I must be loved*

Pres.	**amandus sum**	**amandus sim**	**amandus esse**
Imp.	**amandus eram**	**amandus essem**	
Fut.	**amandus erō**		
Perf.	**amandus fuī**	**amandus fuerim**	**amandus fuisse**
Plup.	**amandus fueram**	**amandus fuissem**	
F. P.	**amandus fuerō**		

RULE OF SYNTAX

271. The agent in the passive periphrastic conjugation is expressed by the dative.

mihi rēs prōvidenda est, *the affair must be arranged by me.*

272. VOCABULARY

benignitās, ātis, f., *kindness.*
cautus, a, um, *cautious, careful.*
colloquium, ī, n., *conversation.*
cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus, *preserve.*
cruentus, a, um, *bloody, stained with blood.*
dēdō, ere, dēdidī, itus, *give up, surrender.*
līberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *set free.*
loquor, ī, locūtus sum, *speak.*
post, *after,* prep. with acc.

recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *refuse.*
remigrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *go back.*
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask.*
tot, *so many,* indecl.

EXERCISES

273. 1. Cōnservātūrī sumus, locūtūrus sum, recūsātūrus erat. 2. Līberātūrus eram, līberātūrī erant, līberandī sunt. 3. Sequendus est, trāditūrus fuisti, trādenda est. 4. Profectūri fuērunt, dīmicātūrī fuimus, ēgressūrī sunt. 5. Post hōc proelium mīlitēs illam urbem sunt adortūrī 6. Peditēs ex castrīs subitō ēgressūrī sunt. 7. Benignitās ducis mīlitibus est amanda. 8. Hae fēminae quae sunt captae līberandae sunt. 9. Dē excidiō illīus oppidī locūtūrī erant. 10. Tot captīvī ex castrīs sunt ēgressūrī. 11. Inter omnēs nātiōnēs pāx cōnfīrmanda est. 12. Istī mīlitēs in patriam remigrātūrī sunt. 13. Auxilium nōndum est rogandum. 14. Multī mīlitēs cruentī sē dēditūrī fuērunt. 15. Haec aedificia nōbis nōn dīripienda sunt.

274. 1. We are about to give up; he was about to speak. 2. He must be set free; we shall be about to speak. 3. You are about to go back; peace must be preserved. 4. Aid must not be refused by us. 5. We were about to march forth suddenly from the camp. 6. The enemy was on the point of surrendering itself to the Roman consul. 7. You are not going to speak about so many disasters.

REVIEW

275. 1. Timōrēs nostrī propter illud nōn auctī essent. 2. Auxilia in prōvinciam statim mittant. 3. Gallī oppidum dēfendere cōnstituērunt. 4. Intereā castra fortiter dēfendantur. 5. Nāvēs statim īnstruerentur. 6. Hōs nūntiōs quī eōdem convēnērunt audīrēmus. 7. Angustiīs in montibus impediēbāmur. 8. Ex hōc oppidō magnam cōpiam frūmentī dīripuērunt. 9. Equitēs nostrī illud oppidum expugnāvisse vidēbantur. 10. Principēs multārum nātiōnum in palūdibus erant captī.

Lesson 51

IRREGULAR VERBS

276. A number of verbs which have special irregularities are called Irregular. The most important of these are **sum, dō, ferō, volō, nōlō. mālō, eō, fīō.**

277. The conjugation of **sum** has been given. Its various compounds are conjugated in the same way. Examples are,

Absum, abesse āfui āfutūrus, *am absent.*
Pres. Partic. **absēns (-tis),** *absent.*
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrūs, *am present.*
praesum, praecsse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *am in charge of.*
Pres. partic. **praesens (-tis),** *present.*
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfūtūrus, *be of benefit.*
(The preposition appears as **prod-** before a vowel).

278. Conjugation of **possum,** *be able.*

In its present system **possum** is a compound of **potis (pote),** *able,* and **sum.** The perfect system and the participle **potēns** (used as an adjective) are from an obsolete verb **poteō.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS

possum, posse, potuī, *can, be able*

Indicative Mood

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**possum, potes, potest;**	**possumus, potestis, possunt.**
Imp.	**poteram,** etc.	**poterāmus,** etc.
Fut.	**poterō,** etc.	**poterimus,** etc.
Perf.	**potuī,** etc.	**potuimus,** etc.
Plup.	**potueram,** etc.	**potuerāmus,** etc.
Fut. Perf.	**potuerō,** etc.	**potuerimus,** etc.

Subjunctive Mood

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**possim, possīs, possit;**	**possīmus, possītis, possint.**
Imp.	**possem,** etc.	**possēmus,** etc.
Perf.	**potuerim,** etc.	**potuerīmus,** etc.
Plup.	**potuissem,** etc.	**potuissēmus,** etc.

Infinitive	**Participle**
Pres. **posse.** Perf. **potuisse.**	*Pres.* **potēns** (as an adjective), *powerful.*

279. VOCABULARY

dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *be wanting, fail.*
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart from.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune.*

incommodum, ī, n., *disaster.*
iterum, *again, a second time.*
longē, adv., *far.*
potestās, ātis, f., *power, opportunity.*
vulnus, eris, n., *wound.*

EXERCISES

280. 1. Poteram, potuerāmus, potuistī. 2. Potuisse, adfuērunt, āfutūrus. 3. Potueris, poterunt, absēns. 4. Potuī, potuerint, adesse. 5. Fortūna Rōmānīs deerat. 6. Potestās pugnandī iterum dēfuit. 7. Hominēs quī adsunt ex castrīs excessūri sunt. 8. Ducēs nostrī dē incommodīs colloquī nōn poterant. 9. Mīlitēs quī vulnera accēpērunt aberunt.

281. 1. They were absent; he could; we can. 2. They would have been able; you had been able; to have been able. 3. They had been present; you are in charge; we should have been absent. 4. Let us be present; I had been in charge; we are present. 5. The horsemen were unable to depart from that place. 6. The opportunity of fleeing was not present. 7. We should have been able to set out.

Lesson 52

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

282. Conjugation of **dō,** *I give.*

This verb is conjugated like any verb of the first conjugation except that the **a** is usually short. **A** is long only in the second person singular of the present indicative and present imperative and in the nominative singular of the present participle.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

dō, dăre, dedī, dătus

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

Pres.	**dō, dās, dat;**	**dămus, datis, dant.**
Imp.	**dăbam,** etc.;	**dăbāmus,** etc.
Fut.	**dăbō,** etc.;	**dăbimus,** etc.
Perf.	**dedī,** etc.;	**dedimus,** etc.
Plup.	**dederam,** etc.;	**dederāmus,** etc.
Fut. Perf.	**dederō,** etc.;	**dederimus,** etc.

Subjunctive Mood

Pres.	**dem,** etc.;	**dēmus,** etc.
Imp.	**dărem,** etc.;	**dărēmus,** etc.
Perf.	**dederim,** etc.;	**dederīmus,** etc.
Plup.	**dedissem,** etc.	**dedissēmus,** etc.

Imperative Mood

Pres.	**dā;**	**dăte.**
Fut.	**dătō;**	**dătōte.**
	dătō;	**dantō.**

	Infinitive	Participle
Pres.	**dăre**	**dāns.**
Perf.	**dedisse**	
Fut.	**dătūrus esse.**	**dătūrus.**

Gerund	Supine
dandī, etc.	**dătum, dătū.**

The passive is inflected consistently with the short vowel; as **dărī, dătur, dăbatur,** etc.

283. **VOCABULARY**

āverto, ere, tī, versus, *avert, turn away.*
iūsiūrandum; gen. **iūris iūrandī,** n., *oath.*
(Each word is declined separately)
lēnis, e, *soft, mild, genile.*
negōtium, ī (iī), n., *business.*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
pūblicus, a, um, *public.*
respōnsum, ī, n., *answer.*
stultus, a, um, *foolish, silly.*
urbānus, a, um, *of a city, refined.*
venia, ae, f., *permission, forgiveness.*

EXERCISES

284. 1. Dedī, dederō, dedissem. 2. Dabat, dabit, daret. 3. Dās, dedisse, dederis. 4. Datum erat, dabimus, dēmus. 5. Pecūnia pūblica cōnsulibus data erat. 6. Hostēs nōbīs respōnsum stultum dedērunt. 7. Tibi venia data est. 8. Barbarī multōs obsidēs dedissent. 9. Inter omnēs quī aderant iūs iūrandum datum est. 10. Rēspōnsum lēne īram āvertit.

285. 1. We had given; you will give; he gave. 2. Having been given; to have given; I should have given. 3. He will have given; let us give; you will give. 4. It would have been given; let them give; it was given. 5. Public money was given them. 6. Many hostages should have been given them. 7. No answer at all will be given you.

Lesson 53

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

286. Conjugation of **ferō**, *I bear*.

This verb has two distinct stems—the present stem **fer**—and the root **tol**—which appears in the perfect system as **tul**—and in the participial system as **lāt**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

ferō **ferre** **tulī** **lātus**

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**ferō, fers, fert;**	**ferimus, fertis, ferunt.**
Imp.	**ferēbam;**	**ferēbāmus.**
Fut.	**feram;**	**ferēmus.**
Perf.	**tulī;**	**tulimus.**
Plup.	**tuleram;**	**tulerāmus.**
F. P.	**tulerō;**	**tulerimus.**

Subjunctive Mood

Pres.	**feram;**	**ferāmus.**
Imp.	**ferrem;**	**ferrēmus.**
Perf.	**tulerim;**	**tulerīmus.**
Plup.	**tulissem;**	**tulissēmus.**

Imperative Mood

Pres.	**fer;**	**ferte.**
Fut.	**fertō;**	**fertōte.**
	fertō;	**feruntō.**

Infinitive	**Participle**
Pres. **ferre.**	*Pres.* **ferēns.**
Perf. **tulisse.**	
Fut. **lātūrus esse.**	*Fut.* **lātūrus.**

	Gerund	Supine
Gen.	**ferendī,**	
Dat.	**ferendō,**	
Acc.	**ferendum,**	*Acc.* **lātum,**
Abl.	**ferendō.**	*Abl.* **lātū.**

Passive Voice

PRINCIPAL PARTS

feror **ferrī** **lātus sum**

Indicative Mood

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**feror, ferris, fertur;**	**ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.**
Imp.	**ferēbar;**	**ferēbāmur.**
Fut.	**ferar;**	**ferēmur.**
Perf.	**lātus sum;**	**lātī sumus.**
Plup.	**lātus eram;**	**lātī erāmus.**
F. P.	**lātus erō;**	**lātī erimus.**

Subjunctive Mood

Pres.	**ferar;**	**ferāmur.**
Imp.	**ferrer;**	**ferrēmur.**
Perf.	**lātus sim;**	**lātī sīmus.**
Plup.	**lātus essem;**	**latī essēmus.**

Imperative Mood

Pres.	**ferre;**	**feriminī.**
Fut.	**fertor;**	———
	fertor;	**feruntor.**

Infinitive		Participle	
Pres.	**ferrī.**	*Perf.*	**lātus.**
Perf.	**lātus esse.**	*Ger.*	**ferendus.**
Fut.	**lātum, īrī.**		

Note the following Compounds—

afferō	**afferre**	**attulī**	**allātus**	*bring*
auferō	**auferre**	**abstulī**	**ablātus**	*take away*
cōnferō	**cōnferre**	**contulī**	**collātus**	*collect*
īnferō	**īnferre**	**intulī**	**illātus**	*bring against*
referō	**referre**	**rettulī**	**relātus**	*bring back*
sufferō	**sufferre**	**sustulī**	**sublātum**	*endure.*

287. VOCABULARY

adhūc, *up to this time, hitherto.*

afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring.*

arceō, ēre, uī, . . . *keep from, hinder.*

coerceō, ēre, uī, itus, *restrain, check.*

condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*

cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *bring together;* **se cōnferre,** *betake one's self.*

impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance;* plural, *baggage.*

numquam, *never.*

ne . . . quidem, *not even;* emphasizes the expression placed between the **ne** and the **quidem.**

perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *carry through, convey, endure.*

protīnus, *forthwith, straightway.*

referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back.*

subsidium, ī, n., *assistance.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising.*

EXERCISES

288. 1. Relātī sunt, tulisse, referēns. 2. Afferet, perfertur, refert 3. Lātī essent, afferētur, affertur. 4. Contulisse, lātus esse, lātūrus. 5. Referendī, attulimus, ferendus. 6. Equitēs nōbīs subsidium ferēdant. 7. Rōmānī sē subitō in castra contulērunt. 8. Multī nūntiī fāmam dē tumultibus ad nōs pertulērunt. 9. Calamitātem ferre bene nōn potest. 10. Mīlitēs impedīmenta in ūnum locum celeriter cōnferent. 11. Sine spē magnā talēs labōrēs numquam pertulisset. 12. Magna cōpia frūmentī ab sociīs afferēbātur. 13. Nāvēs impedīmenta et frūmentum rettulērunt. 14. Nē hīc quidem nūntius fāmam dē calamitāte attulit. 15. Potestās fāmam referendī nēminī data est.

289. 1. To have borne; I bring together; you are bringing. 2. They brought back; he would have borne; you will bear. 3. By bearing; let them endure; he will bring. 4. We have borne; you would have borne; you would be bringing together. 5. The messengers brought back many reports about the calamity. 6. The grain should have been brought to us at once. 7. We can in no way endure disgrace. 8. The standards have been brought back with glory.

Lesson 54

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

290. Conjugation of **volō**, *I wish*, and its compounds.

Nōlō, *I am unwilling*, is a compound of **nē** and **volō**. **Mālō**, *I prefer*, is made up of **magis** and **volō**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

volō,	**velle**	**voluī.**
nōlō,	**nōlle,**	**nōluī.**
mālō	**mālle,**	**māluī.**

Indicative Mood

Pres.	**volō,**	**nōlō,**	**mālō,**
	vīs,	**nōn vīs,**	**māvīs,**
	vult;	**nōn vult;**	**māvult;**
	volumus,	**nōlumus,**	**mālumus,**
	vultis,	**nōn vultis,**	**māvultis,**
	volunt.	**nōlunt.**	**mālunt.**
Imp.	**volēbam.**	**nōlēbam.**	**mālēbam.**
Fut.	**volam.**	**nōlam.**	**mālam.**
Perf.	**voluī.**	**nōluī.**	**māluī.**
Plup.	**volueram.**	**nōlueram.**	**mālueram.**
F. P.	**voluerō.**	**nōluerō.**	**māluerō.**

Subjunctive Mood

Pres.	**velim.**	**nōlim.**	**mālim.**
Imp.	**vellem.**	**nōllem.**	**māllem.**
Perf.	**voluerim.**	**nōluerim.**	**māluerim.**
Plup.	**voluissem.**	**nōluissem.**	**māluissem.**

Imperative Mood

Pres.	**nōlī,**	**nōlīte,**
Fut.	**nōlītō,**	**nōlītōte,**
	nōlītō,	**nōluntō.**

Infinitive

Pres.	**velle.**	**nōlle.**	**mālle.**
Perf.	**voluisse.**	**nōluisse.**	**māluisse.**

Participle

Pres.	**volēns.**	**nōlēns.**

291. VOCABULARY

accendō, ere, accendī, accensum, *enkindle, rouse.*
aspectus, ūs, m., *sight, look, appearance.*
dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus, *abandon, desert, neglect.*
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart.*
hūc, adv., *hither.*
maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime.*
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*
ōra, ae, f., *coast.*
quārē, adv., *wherefore, why?*
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write;* of laws, *draw up.*
ūsus mīlitāris, *military experience.*

EXERCISES

292. 1. Volumus, voluimus, mālumus. 2. Nōn vultis, vultis, māvultis. 3. Vīs, nōluerātis, māluerit. 4. Vellēs, nōluissētis, mālit. 5. Volēbās, māllēs, māluit. 6. Iram mīlitum accendere nōluit. 7. Cōnsul morīrī māvult. 8. Quārē hūc venīre voluisti? 9. Ab ōrā maritimā discēdere nōluissem. 10. Mīlitēs fortēs urbem dēserere nōlent. 11. In hāc urbe manēre māluissēmus. 12. Nūntius ducem vidēre vult. 13. Quārē dē ūsū mīlitārī tuō scrībere nōn vīs?

293. 1. They wished; he is unwilling; they will prefer. 2. We should have wished; to have preferred; I had been unwilling. 3. You wish; he will wish; he would have preferred. 4. Brave soldiers are always unwilling to withdraw. 5. Why did he prefer to proceed hither? 6. The leader will be unwilling to desert the place. 7. He does not wish to rouse the anger of the allies. 8. He will not wish to speak about his military experience.

Lesson 55

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

294. Conjugation of **fiō** (passive of **faciō**), *be made, be done, occur,* or *become.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

fiō,	**fierī,**	**factus sum.**

Indicative Mood

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**fīō, fīs, fit;**	**fīmus, fītis, fīunt.**
Imp.	**fīēbam;**	**fīēbāmus.**
Fut.	**fīam;**	**fīēmus.**
Perf.	**factus sum;**	**factī sumus.**
Plup.	**factus eram;**	**factī erāmus.**
F. P.	**factus erō;**	**factī erimus.**

Subjunctive Mood

Pres.	**fīam;**	**fīāmus.**
Imp.	**fierem;**	**fierēmus.**
Perf.	**factus sim;**	**factī sīmus.**
Plup.	**factus essem;**	**factī essēmus.**

Imperative Mood

Pres.	**fī;**	**fīte.**

	Infinitive	**Participle**
Pres.	**fierī.**	
Perf.	**factus esse.**	*Perf.* **factus.**
Fut.	**factum īrī.**	*Ger.* **faciendus.**

295. VOCABULARY

aptus, a, um, *suitable, fit.*

certus, a, um, *sure.* N. B. phrase **certior fierī,** lit. *to be made more certain,* i. e., *to be informed.*

claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, *shut up, close, surround.*

concursus, ūs, m., *a running together.*

crēber, bra, brum, *frequent.*

dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, *divide, separate.*

hodiē, *today.*

libenter, *willingly, with pleasure.*

ob, *on account of,* prep. with acc.

per, *through, by means of,* prep. with acc.

perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*

repentīnus, a, um, *sudden.*

vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer.*

EXERCISES

296. 1. Factum erat, fīs, fīam. 2. Fīēmus, factī estis, factus erō. 3. Fīēbātis, fīāmus, factī essēmus. 4. Fī, factum **īrī,** factus esse. 5. Fierēmus, factī erant, fīunt. 6. Ob multās causās crēbra proelia fiēbant.

7. Caesar dē hōc Gallōrum tumultū certior factus est. 8. Praedam libenter dīvīsērunt. 9. Repentīnī et magnī concursūs prō castrīs fiēbant. 10. Dē fugā repentīnā Gallōrum per perfugās nōs certiōrēs factī sumus.

297. 1. We became; you are becoming; it will occur. 2. It would have happened; we should have become; let us become. 3. The consuls have been informed concerning the uprising. 4. Those barbarians will be made free today. 5. Sudden disasters occur frequently. 6. Because of many reasons he had not become the leader of the army. 7. Let us willingly become suitable soldiers.

Lesson 56

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

298. Conjugation of **ēo,** *I go.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

eō, īre, iī(īvī), itum

Indicative Mood

Pres.	**eō, īs, it;**	**īmus, ītis, eunt.**
Imp.	**ībam;**	**ībāmus.**
Fut.	**ībō;**	**ībimus.**
Perf.	**īvī;**	**īvimus.**
Plup.	**īveram;**	**īverāmus.**
F. P.	**īverō;**	**īverimus.**

Subjunctive Mood

Pres.	**eam;**	**eāmus.**
Imp.	**īrem;**	**īrēmus.**
Perf.	**īverim;**	**īverīmus.**
Plup.	**īvissem;**	**īvissēmus.**

Imperative Mood

Pres.	**ī;**	**īte.**
Fut.	**ītō,**	**ītōte,**
	ītō;	**euntō.**

Infinitive		**Participle**	
Pres.	**īre.**	*Pres.* **iēns,**	*Gen.* **euntis.**
Perf.	**īvisse.**		
Fut.	**itūrus esse.**	*Fut.* **itūrus.**	

	Gerund		Supine
Gen.	**eundī,**		
Dat.	**eundō,**		
Acc.	**eundum,**	*Acc.*	**itum,**
Abl.	**eundō.**	*Abl.*	**itū.**

299. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

1. Interrogative Sentences are of various sorts. They may contain no interrogative word.

vīs pugnāre? *do you want to fight?*

2. They may be introduced by an interrogative word, usually one of the following:

(a) by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb.

quid agis? *What are you doing?*

cūr loquimur? *Why do we speak?*

(b) by the enclitic **-ne** attached to the emphatic word, usually the first in the sentence.

vidēsne me? *Do you see me?*

(c) by **nōnne** expecting the answer *yes.*

nōnne meministi? *Don't you remember?*

(d) by **num,** expecting the answer *no.*

num īnfitiarī potes? *You can't deny it, can you?*

300. VOCABULARY

adeō, īre iī, itus, *go to, visit.*

circiter, adv., *about.*

circumeō, īre, iī, itus, *go around, surround.*

clam, *secretly.*

cur, *why.*

ineō, īre, iī, itus, *enter upon;* **consilium inīre,** *form a plan.*

intereō, īre, iī, itūrus, *perish.*

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, attached to emphatic word, and expecting either a negative or affirmative answer.

nōnne, interrogative particle expecting the answer *yes.*

num, interrogative particle expecting the answer *no;* in indirect questions, *whether.*

redeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *return.*

trāns, *across,* prep. with acc.

transeō, īre, iī, itus, *cross.*

EXERCISES

301. 1. Īmus, adiisse, ierat. 2. Adiisse, adeāmus, rediimus. 3. Interitūrus, interiit, interierant. 4. Redībitis, redības, itūrus esse. 5. In urbem redīre vīs? 6. Cūr flūmen trānsitūrī sumus? 7. Nōnne hostēs transeundī initium fēcērunt? 8. Num illī consilia dē bellō clam inīre cōnantur? 9. Trānseuntne barbarī hōc flūmen? 10. Omnēs ex prōvinciā in urbem redierant.

302. 1. We are going; you will return; let us cross. 2. You would have perished; they had visited; he has formed a plan. 3. They will go around; we shall cross; let them visit. 4. They haven't surrounded the camp, have they? 5. You will cross the river quickly, won't you? 6. Why did so many nations form plans for war? 7. All would surely have perished.

Lesson 57

DEFECTIVE VERBS

303. Defective Verbs lack certain forms. Some of the most important are as follows:

Conjugation of **aiō,** *I say*

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	**aiō**	———	———	———
	ais	———	**aiās**	———
	ait	**aiunt**	**aiat**	———
Imp.	**aiēbam**	**aiēbāmus**		
	aiēbās	**aiēbātis**		
	aiēbat	**aiēbant**		

Imperative	Participle
aī	**aiēns**

Conjugation of **inquam,** *I say*

	Indicative				
Pres.	**inquam**	**inquimus**	*Fut.*	———	———
	inquis	**inquitis**		**inquiēs**	———
	inquit	**inquiunt**		**inquiet**	———
Imp.	———	———	*Perf.*	**inquiī**	———
	———	———		**inquīstī**	———
	inquiēbat	———		———	———

Imperative

inque	**inquitō**

The following verbs are used chiefly in the perfect system.

coepī, *I have begun, I began.* **meminī,** *I remember.* **ōdī,** *I hate.*

Indicative

Perf.	**coepī**	**meminī**	**ōdī**
Plup.	**coeperam**	**memineram**	**ōderam**
F. P.	**coeperō**	**meminerō**	**ōderō**

Imperative

Sing. **mementō** Plural **mementōte**

Infinitive

Perf.	**coepisse**	**meminisse**	**ōdisse**
Fut.	**coeptūrus esse**		**ōsūrus esse.**

Participles

Perf.	**coeptus,** *begun*	**ōsus**
Fut.	**coeptūrus**	**ōsūrus**

Though Perfect in form, **meminī** and **ōdī** are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have respectively the Imperfect and Future meaning.

304. VOCABULARY

aiō, ———, ———, ———, *say.*
coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began, have begun.*
duodecim, indecl., *twelve.*
eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *begin.*
inquam, ———, **inquiī,** ———, *say.*
nōvī, nōvisse, *know.*
meminī, meminisse, *remember.*
ōdī, ōdisse, *hate.*
sinister, tra, trum, *left.*
turpis, e, *base.*
unde, *whence.*

EXERCISES

305. 1. Aiunt, inquiunt, aiēbāmus. 2. Inquiīsti, ait, inquit. 3. Coepērunt, meminerat, ōderis. 4. Odisse, coepissēs, ōdit. 5. Hostēs

eō, unde rediimus, proficīscī incipiunt. 6. Acriter duodecim mīlia peditum trānseundī initium fēcērunt. 7. Barbarī omnēs iniūriās meminērunt quās maiōrēs suī pertulērunt. 8. Turpēs hominēs semper bonōs ōdērunt. 9. Cōnsulēs trānseundī cōnsilium inīre coepērunt. 10. Hostēs sinistrum cornū circumīre incipiunt.

306. 1. He says; we said; you have said. 2. I hate; you hated; we have begun. 3. To be about to hate; you will have begun; they had begun. 4. The cavalry had begun to cross the river. 5. Bad men always remember injuries. 6. They are forming a plan of approaching the city. 7. The women and children of this town will always remember the deeds of the enemy.

Lesson 58

IMPERSONAL VERBS

307. Impersonal Verbs in Latin correspond to the English Impersonal with "it." Thus, **licet,** *it is lawful;* **oportet,** *it is fitting.* These verbs never have a personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun. Thus **hōc fierī oportet,** *it is necessary that this be done;* **hōc decet,** *this is fitting.* They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

308. Some of these verbs are:

accidit	**accidere**	**accidit**	*it happens*
decet	**decēre**	**decuit**	*it becomes*
licet	**licēre**	**licuit**	*it is permitted*
miseret	**miserēre**	**miseritum est**	*it excites pity*
oportet	**oportēre**	**oportuit**	*it is fitting*
paenitet	**paenitēre**	**paenituit**	*it causes regret*

The passive voice of some intransitive verbs is used impersonally. Thus,

curritur	lit. *it is run*	*people run*
pugnātum est	lit. *it was fought*	*the battle was fought*
ventum est	lit. *it has been come*	*people have come*
vivitur	lit. *it is lived*	*people live.*

309. VOCABULARY

accēdō, ere, accessī, accessum, *draw near, advance.*
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *yield.*

concurrō, ere, currī, concursum, *run together.*
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *say.*
melior, ius, *better,* comp. of **bonus.**
neglegō, ere, ēxī, ēctus, *neglect.*
profugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, escape.*
quandō, *when?*
quō, *whither,* interrogative and relative adv.
recēdō, ere, recessī, recessum, *go back, retreat.*

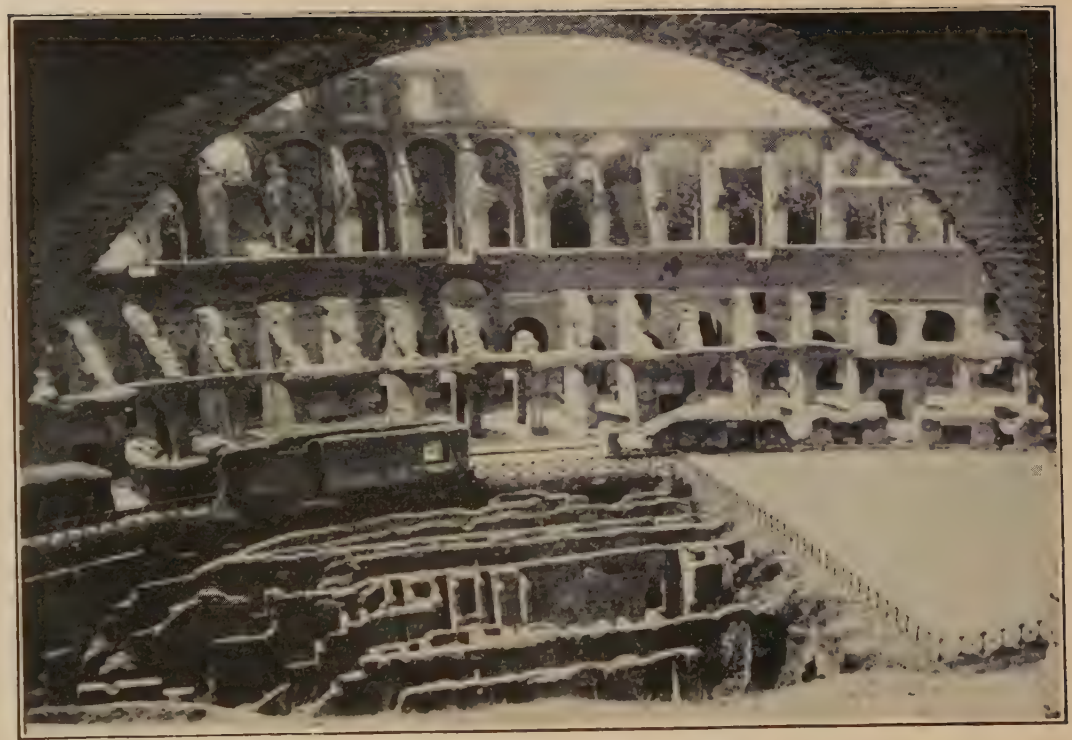
EXERCISES

310. 1. Audācter pugnātum est. 2. Recēdendum est hostibus. 3. Maximē ad signa concurritur. 4. Ad cōnsulēs nūntiīs veniendum est. 5. Quandō ad urbem redībis? 6. Mē paenitet hōc fēcisse. 7. Nōn oportet cīvēs officia neglegere. 8. A meliōribus ad ducem curritur. 9. Quō nōbīs accēdendum est? 10. Eō vōbīs profugiendum est. 11. Licet rēs meliōrēs spērāre. 12. Multa dīxī quae dīcere oportuit. 13. Meliōrem puerum numquam vīdī. **14.** Omnibus audācter resistendum est.

311. **1.** We must fight bravely. 2. There was daring fighting (=it was fought boldly) in that place. 3. You will never see a better general. **4.** It is permitted to write. 5. It is not fitting to neglect the duties of a citizen. 6. When did the soldiers run (=cursum est., etc.) to the lieutenants? **7.** The enemy must come (use passive periphrastic conj.) hither. 8. We must never yield.

REVIEW

312. 1. Omnēs quī potuērunt adfuērunt. 2. Mīlitēs quī vulnera accēpērunt absunt. 3. Barbarīs venia data est. 4. Inter omnēs quī aderunt iūs iūrandum dabitur. 5. Rōmānī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt. 6. Ab ōrā maritimā discēdere nōluī. 7. In hāc urbe manēre māluī. 8. Dē fugā repentīnā hostium per perfugās dux certior factus est. 9. Num hostēs transeundī initium fēcērunt? 10. Lēgātī nōbīscum dē pācis condicionibus colloquēbantur.



Photograph by permission of A. S. Cooley.

COLOSSEUM. INTERIOR THROUGH ARCH OF UPPER STAIRWAY ON NORTH SIDE.

PART II.—SYNTAX

Lesson 59

CASES, GENERAL REMARKS AND REVIEW

Latin differs especially from English in what are called its cases.

The case of a noun or adjective is such a change in form as marks its relation to other words in a sentence. The English language no longer possesses a case-system, but the remnants of one may be seen in the strictly possessive case, *John's hat*, etc., and in certain pronouns: *he, him; who, whose, whom*, etc. German, however, still preserves its case-system.

In Latin the order of the words gives us little or no information as to the relation of a noun to the rest of the sentence. The exact relation or syntax of a noun is marked by its case. However, the number of cases in Latin is really only six, and since this number is far too small to express the number of relations which the language must describe, Latin also makes use of many prepositions.

The Nominative and Vocative Cases.

In general, the Nominative case may be said to indicate the subject of the verb. Without such a subject, expressed or understood, the verb is meaningless. Impersonal verbs alone approximate the idea of verbal action without a subject; e.g., **curritur,** *there is running.*

The uses of the Nominative may be defined in greater detail as follows:

313. The Subject of a Finite Verb (any form of the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative) is in the Nominative Case.

Cicerō scrīpsit, *Cicero wrote.*

314. A noun used with, and explaining, another noun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an Appositive and is said to be in Apposition.

An Appositive agrees with its noun or pronoun in case, and, if possible, in number and gender.

assentātiō, adiūtrīx vitiōrum, *flattery, the promoter of evils.*
P. Scīpiō, pontifex maximus, *Publius Scipio, pontifex maximus.*
historia, magistra vītae, *history, the teacher of life.*

315. A noun connected with the subject by some form of the verb **sum** or other intransitive verb is called a Predicate Noun.

A Predicate Noun agrees in case and, whenever possible, in number and gender with the noun which it modifies.

vīta rūstica parsimōniae magistra est, *country life is the teacher of thrift.*

cōnsulēs creantur Caesar et Servīlius, *Caesar and Servilius are elected consuls.*

316. The Vocative Case is the case of address, and is the same as the nominative except in the second declension, where it usually ends in **-e.**

crēdite mihi, iūdices, *believe me, judges.*
nāte, mea magna potentia sōlus, *my son, thou alone my great power.*

317. VOCABULARY

adiūtrix, īcis, f., *helper, promoter.*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *lose.*
arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *summon.*
armātūra, ae, f., *equipment.*
assentātiō, ōnis, f., *flattery.*
auctōritās, ātis, f., *authority.*
cēterī, ae, a, *the rest, the others.*
creō, āre, āvī, ātus, *create, elect.*
cupīdō, inis, f., *desire.*
cūstōdia, ae, f., *custody.*
cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f., *guard, keeper.*
historia, ae, f., *a narrative of past events, history.*
praemium, ī, n., *reward.*
supersum, esse, fuī, *remain, be left.*
tantus, a, um, *so great, so much.*
vērus, a, um, *true, genuine.*

EXERCISES

318. 1. Galba lēgātus factus est. 2. Cēterī auxilium relīctī sunt. 3. Galba, cōnsul, multōs mīlitēs amīsit. 4. Omnēs quī supersunt praemia accipient. 5. Mīlitēs Rōmānī, prō patriā moriāmur. 6. Dux illōs, fortissimōs, arcessīvit. 7. Cōnsulēs, ducēs exercitūs, maiōrem auctōritātem quam lēgātī habent. 8. Assentātiō numquam est adiūtrix amīcitiae vērae. 9. Semper duo virī cōnsulēs creantur. 10. Historia est cūstōs rērum gestārum.

319. 1. Brave citizens, you will receive great rewards. 2. The rest were left as guards of the city. 3. True friendship is the promoter of great things. 4. Good men hate flattery. 5. Many men were sent as envoys to the leader. 6. Those who remain will be true friends. 7. You will be elected consuls.

Lesson 60

GENITIVE CASE

320. The Genitive is used to complete or limit the meaning of nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs. Its most important uses may be classified as follows:

Genitive of Possession

321. The Genitive of Possession is used to denote ownership.

potentia Pompeī, *Pompey's power.*
domus Cicerōnis, *Cicero's house.*

Subjective Genitive

322. The Subjective Genitive denotes the subject of an action implied in a noun.

Caesaris adventus, *the arrival of Caesar.*
timōrēs līberōrum, *the fears of the children.*

Objective Genitive

323. The Objective Genitive denotes the object of an action implied in a noun or an adjective.

cupīdō glōriae, *desire for glory.*
cupidus rērum novārum, *desirous of a revolution.*

Genitive of the Whole

324. The Genitive of the Whole denotes the whole from which a part is taken. The part may be expressed by a noun, adjective, or adverb.

eōrum ūna pars, *one part of them.*
plūs auctōritātis, *more authority.*
satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum, *enough eloquence, too little wisdom.*

Genitive of Material

325. The Genitive of Material denotes that of which something consists or is made. Strictly speaking it is a genitive of the whole.

talentum aurī, *a talent of gold.*
acervus frūmentī, *a pile of grain.*

Appositional Genitive

326. The Genitive is sometimes used to define a word of general meaning. This is called the Appositional Genitive.

Trōiae urbem, *the city (of) Troy*
nōmen amīcitiae, *the name (of) friendship.*

Genitive of Quality or Description

327. The Genitive modified by adjective is sometimes used with a noun to denote a quality of that noun. This is known as the Genitive of Quality or Description.

vir magnae virtūtis, *a man of great virtue.*
adulēscēns nullīus cōnsiliī, *a youth of no judgment.*

Genitive of Specification

328. The Genitive of Specification is used with a few nouns and many adjectives to denote that with reference to which a quality exists.

praestantia virtūtis, *preeminence in virtue.*
ferōcēs linguae, *bold of tongue.*
perītus bellī, *skilled in war.*

329. VOCABULARY

acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile.*
admīror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder at, admire.*
ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*
ēloquentia, ae, f., *eloquence.*
flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*
imperium, ī, n., *rule, command.*
levis, e, *light.*
magister, trī, m., *master.*
modus, ī, m., *manner, kind.*
nōnnullus, a, um, *some.*
pābulum, ī, n., *forage.*
plūs, comp. of *multus.*
Pompeius, Pompeī, m., *Pompey,* a man's name.
quantus, a, um, *how much, how great?*
satis, *enough,* indeed.

EXERCISES

330. 1. Pompeī potentia maior quam Caesaris nōn erat. 2. Ancorae nāvium āmissae erant. 3. Caesar plūs imperiī flāgitāvit. 4. Ille satis ēloquentiae nōn habet. 5. Nōbīs cūstōdiam captīvōrum trādiderat. 6. Tantum pābulī superest. 7. Timōrēs līberōrum et fēminārum quae aderant maximī erant. 8. In castrīs acervōs frūmentī vīdimus. 9. Peditēs levis armātūrae arcessēmus. 10. Quantum pābulī populus hūius oppidī vōbīs trādidit? 11. Urbs Rōmae pulcherrima est.

331. 1. Pompey's soldiers are very brave. 2. We greatly admire the man's eloquence. 3. How much grain was in the fields? 4. Did you

receive enough money? 5. Some horsemen of the Roman army remained with us. 6. Piles of grain were seen in the field. 7. Fear of the enemy impeded the attack. 8. The victory of our soldiers, men of daring, will be most pleasing. 9. Rome was a city of this kind.

Lesson 61

GENITIVE CASE, Continued

Genitive of Charge or Penalty

332. Verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting take a genitive of the charge.

accusātus est proditiōnis, *he was accused of treason.*
capitis condemnārī, *to be condemned to death.*

Genitive with "interest"

333. With interest the person or thing concerned is denoted by the Genitive. If, however, the person concerned is expressed in English by a pronoun, the Latin uses the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective, i.e., **meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā,** or **suā.**

patris interest, *it concerns the father.*
meā interest, *it concerns me.*

Genitive with Verbs of Plenty or Want

334. The genitive is sometimes used with verbs, as it is with adjectives meaning plenty or want.

implentur vīnī, *they are filling themselves with wine.*
egeō cōnsilī, *I need advice.*

Verbs of *Remembering, Forgetting,* or *Reminding.*

335. **Meminī** and **reminīscor,** when they mean *to be mindful of;* **meminī,** meaning *to mention;* and **oblīvīscor,** meaning *to be unmindful of,* take the genitive.

336. **Meminī** and **reminīscor,** meaning literally *to remember, to retain in mind,* and **oblīvīviscor,** meaning literally *to forget,* take the accusative.

animus praeteritōrum meminit, *the mind remembers the past.*
Achillem, cūius suprā meminimus, *Achilles, whom I mentioned above.*
Cinnam meminī, *I remember Cinna.*
tōtam causam oblītus est, *he forgot the whole case.*

Genitive with Impersonal Verbs

337. The impersonal verbs **miseret,** *it rouses pity;* **paenitet,** *it causes regret;* **piget,** *it disgusts;* **pudet,** *it shames;* and **taedet,** *it wearies,* take the accusative of the person affected, and the genitive of the cause of the feeling.

pudet mē tuī, *I am ashamed of you.*
eōrum nōs miseret, *we pity them.*

338. VOCABULARY

accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call one to account, accuse.*
beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, favor.*
contumēlia, ae, f., *insult.*
dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt.*
etiam, *also.*
imperītus, a, um, *inexperienced.*
interest, *it concerns.*
oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum, *be unmindful, forget.*
piget, *it disgusts.*
plēnus, a, um, *full.*
prīstinus, a, um, *pristine, former.*
prōditiō, ōnis, f., *betrayal, treason.*
pudet, *it shames.*
reminīscor, ī, *remember.*
taedet, *it wearies.*

EXERCISES

339. 1. Cor bonum plenum est beneficiōrum. 2. Multī mīlitēs prōditiōnis accūsātī sunt. 3. Nostrā interest. 4. Cīvium interest. 5. Omnium hārum contumēliārum meminerimus. 6. Prīstinōrum beneficiōrum oblīvīscuntur. 7. Illīus dēfectiōnis mīlitēs paenitet. 8. Captivōrum nōs miseret. 9. Vītae omnium perīculōrum plēnae sunt. 10. Malōrum prīstinōrum oblīvīscāmur.

340. 1. He has been accused of the insult. 2. It greatly concerns you. 3. Let us remember the valor of our ancestors. 4. You will never be unmindful of his favors. 5. We are disgusted with this. 6. He always pitied captives. 7. Good men regret this war.

Lesson 62

DATIVE CASE

The Dative is usually used either to denote an indirect object or a person or thing interested in the action of the verb.

Its various uses may be classified as follows:

Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs

341. Transitive verbs take the accusative of the Direct Object and the dative of the Indirect Object.

rēgī haec dīcite, *tell the king this.*
hanc pecūniam mihi dat, *he gives me this money.*

Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs

342. Many intransitive verbs take the dative, especially those signifying *favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade,* and the like.

amīcīs cōnfīdō, *I trust my friends.*
huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat et cōnfīdēbat, *Caesar had indulged this legion and had confidence in it.*

Indirect Object with Compound Verbs

343. The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub,** and **super.**

fīnitimīs bellum īnferre, *to make war on one's neighbors.*
exercituī praefuit, *he was in command of the army.*

344. VOCABULARY

cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., *trust.*
faveō, ēre, favī, fautus, *favor.*
indulgeō, ēre, indulsī, indultus, *be kind, indulge in* (a thing).
īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, *bring upon.*
intersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be present.*
mulier, eris, f., *woman.*
noceō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *injure, harm.*
parātus, a, um, *ready, prepared.*
parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *spare.*
persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *persuade.*

placeō, ēre, uī, placitūrus, *please.*
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *put in charge.*
praesum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be in charge of.*
rēs pūblica, gen. **reī pūblicae,** f., *state, commonwealth.*
sermō, ōnis, m., *conversation.*

EXERCISES

345. 1. Mīlitibus haec dīcite. 2. Caesar mulieribus et līberīs indulgēbat. 3. Reī pūblicae nocēbitis. 4. Cōnsulēs castrīs quae mīlitēs fēcerant lēgātum praefēcērunt. 5. Barbarīs bellum inferre parātī sumus. 6. Caesar hīs mīlitibus propter virtūtem maximē cōnfīdit. 7. Tālēs hominēs nōbīs nōn placent. 8. Parcite semper, mīlitēs, fēminīs et līberīs. 9. Dūcēs nūllīs mīlitibus verbīs suīs persuādēre possunt. 10. Lēgātī sermōnī eius interfuērunt.

346. 1. I especially trusted them. 2. They had already given the soldiers the rewards. 3. He tried to be kind to his enemies also. 4. The barbarians did not always spare the women and children. 5. You will be in charge of the fortification which we have made. 6. Let us persuade our fellow citizens with these words. 7. Caesar put a lieutenant in charge of the smaller camp. 8. Who can bring war upon Italy? 9. The leader's plans pleased no one.

Lesson 63

DATIVE CASE, Continued

Dative of Reference

347. The Dative of Reference is used to denote the person to whom a statement refers or of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest.

cōnsurrēxērunt omnēs illī, *all rose in his honor.*
interclūdere hostibus commeātum, *to cut off the supplies of the enemy.*

Dative of Possession

348. The dative is used with forms of **sum** to denote the possessor.

tibi est liber, *you have a book* (lit., *a book is to you*).
contrōversia mihi fuit cum avunculō tuō, *I had a debate with your uncle.*

Dative of Agent

349. The dative is used with the gerundive to express the agent.

haec nōbīs agenda sunt, *these things must be done by us.*
mihi eundum est, *I must go.*

Dative of Purpose or Tendency

350. The dative is often used to express the purpose or tendency of an action. This is often used with another dative (Reference), denoting the person concerned.

cecinit receptuī, *he gave the signal for a retreat.*
id mūnerī mīsit, *he sent it as a present.*
nōbīs sunt odiō, *they are an object of hatred to us* (literally, *they are as a hatred to us*).

Dative with Adjectives

351. The dative is used with adjectives denoting *friendliness, hostility, likeness, unlikeness, equality, nearness, relation, fitness,* etc.

par similisque cēterīs, *equal to and like the rest.*
castrīs idoneum locum dēlēgit, *he selected a place suitable for a camp.*

352. VOCABULARY

adversus, a, um, *adverse.*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus, *sing, play.*
commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies.*
conspectus, ūs, m., *view, sight.*
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lectum, *choose out, select.*
facinus, facinoris, n., *crime.*
interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *cut off, hinder.*
munus, eris, n., *duty, favor, gift.*
odium, ī, n., *hatred.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
prōiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *throw, cast.*
proximus, a, um, *nearest, next.*
receptus, ūs, m., *retreat.*
rīpa, ae, f., *bank* (of a river).
tēlum, ī, n., *javelin.*
ūsus, ūs, m., *use, service.*

EXERCISES

353. 1. Pompeius Caesarī commeātum interclūdere nōn potest. 2. Hostibus nōn sunt equitēs. 3. Barbarī receptuī canent. 4. Caesar multīs odiō erat. 5. Mīlitēs, fortiter nōbis dīmicandum est. 6. Castrīs

idōneum locum nōn possumus dēligere. 7. Mīlitēs lēgātīs suīs inimici sunt. 8. Quae poena huic facinorī pār est? 9. Ventī adversī nautīs nōn placent. 10. Cōnsilia hūius hominis mihi magnō usuī erant. 11. Patrēs et filiī semper amandī sunt.

354. 1. The Romans had large armies. 2. The soldiers did many things in his honor. 3. Shields and javelins must be given the soldiers by us. 4. We must go (=it must be gone by us;) at once to the camp. 5. This general always selects a place suitable for a cavalry battle. 6. The most suitable place for the camp is next the sea. 7. The cavalry was not a great service to us here.

Lesson 64

ACCUSATIVE CASE

The Accusative is usually used to complete the meaning of a transitive verb by denoting the immediate object of its action. It has several varying uses, however, all of which may be arranged as follows:

Direct Object

355. The Direct Object of a verb is in the accusative case. It may denote that which is produced or that which is affected.

librum scrīpsit *he wrote a book.*
oppida sua omnia incendunt, *they burn all their towns.*

Accusative of Exclamation

356. The accusative is used in exclamations.

mē miserum! *wretched me!* **testīs ēgregiōs!** *fine witnesses!*

Two Accusatives. Direct Object and Predicate Accusative.

357. Verbs meaning *to make, choose, call, show,* etc., may take two accusatives, one the direct object, the other a predicate accusative.

Hamilcarem imperātōrem fēcērunt, *they made Hamilcar general.*
ducem sē praebuit, *he offered himself leader.*

358. A predicate accusative may be an adjective as well as a noun.

hostēs hōc iter perīculōsum reddiderant, *the enemy had made this road dangerous.*

359. VOCABULARY

alacer, cris, cre, *eager.*
dictātor, ōris, m., *dictator.*
efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *make, render.*

ēgregius, a, um, *excellent, eminent.*
frāter, tris, m., *brother.*
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pass the winter.*
iūdex, icis, m., *judge.*
opportūnus a, um, *fit, opportune.*
perīculōsus, a, um, *dangerous.*
praetor, ōris, m., *praetor.*
prīvātus, a, um, *private.*
-que, *and,* enclitic conjunction.
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *give back, render.*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel.*
tempus, oris, n., *time.*
timidus, a, um, *fearful, afraid.*

EXERCISES

360. 1. Equitātum omnem ante sē mīsit. 2. Nōs miserōs! 3. Urbem Rōmam vocant. 4. Populus Rōmānus Caesarem dictātōrem fēcērunt. 5. Eius verba mīlitēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcerant. 6. Omnēs hunc hominem malum iūdicant. 7. Templa aedificiaque prīvāta incendent. 8. Omnēs dolōrem sentiunt. 9. Multae calamitātēs ducem timidum reddidērunt. 10. Eius frātrem ēgregium iūdicāverant. 11. Tempus opportūnum dēligāmus. 12. Quem praetōrem appellant est iūdex.

361. 1. What a calamity! 2. They have burned all the temples and private buildings. 3. The Roman people made that man praetor. 4. The enemy made that road dangerous. 5. This man was chosen (as) leader. 6. That thing made the soldiers more eager for battle. 7. Let us be brave and daring.

Lesson 65

ACCUSATIVE CASE, Continued

Two Accusatives. Person and Thing

362. Some verbs meaning *to ask, demand, teach, conceal,* etc., take two accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing.

mē sententiam rogāvit, *he asked me my opinion.*
tē litterās docēō, *I teach you the letters.*
iter omnēs cēlat, *he conceals his march from everyone.*

Two Accusatives With Compound Verbs

363. Verbs compounded with **circum** or **trans** may take two accusatives, one depending on the verb, the other on the preposition.

eōs sua praesidia circumdūxit, *he led them around his fortifications.*
flūmen exercitum tradūxit, *he led his army across the river.*

Accusative of Limit of Motion

364. The limit of motion is expressed by the accusative with a preposition.

lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, *they send envoys to Caesar.*
ad Italiam vēnit, *he came to Italy.*

365. With names of towns; small islands; **domum,** *home;* **domōs,** *homes;* and **rūs,** *country,* the preposition is regularly omitted.

rūs ībō, *I shall go to the country.*
domōs suās discēdunt, *they scatter to their homes.*
Rōmam contendit, *he hastens to Rome.*

Accusative of Extent

366. Extent of time or space is regularly expressed by the accusative.

quadrāgintā annōs vīxit, *he lived for forty years.*
fossae quīndecim pedes lātae, *trenches fifteen feet wide.*

367. VOCABULARY

ac (atque), *and, and also;* **ac** never used before vowels.
Athēnae, ārum, f., *Athens.*
bīduum, ī, n., *two days.*
circumducō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead around.*
cottīdiē, adv., *every day, daily.*
domus, ūs, f., *house, home.*
ēdoceō, ēre, uī, ēdoctus, *teach.*
Hibērus, ī, m., *Hiberus,* a river in Spain.
interim, *in the meanwhile.*
obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *occupy, hold.*
ops, opis, f., *power, help* (nom. sing. never used); in plu., *resources.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet).
petō, ere, īvī, (iī), ītus, *seek, request.*
polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise.*
rēgnum, ī, n., *kingdom.*
sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred.*
trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead across.*

EXERCISES

368. 1. Mē cōnsilia sua cēlāvit. 2. Mīlitēs castra circumdūcet 3. Tē multa ēdocet. 4. Lēgātus interim cōpiās flūmen trādūxit. 5. Caesar cottidiē Haeduōs omnia, quae pollicitī erant, flāgitābat. 6. Ad prōvinciam proficīscāmur. 7. Bīduum in hīs locīs mānsit. 8. Mē sententiam rogāvit. 9. Paucōs mīlitēs domum redūxit. 10. Quandō Athēnās redībit? 11. Rōma ab illō locō sescentōs passūs abest. 12. Haec turris trīginta pedēs alta est. 13. Decem mīlia passuum reductī erāmus.

369. 1. I asked him many things. 2. We have advanced ten miles from Rome. 3. The barbarians have concealed their march from the Romans. 4. Caesar would have led his troops across the Ebro. 5. We will remain in Italy for two years. 6. Let us go to Rome at once. 7. I demanded of him the money which he owed me. 8. He held the kingdom for a short time. 9. Will he be able to teach us many things? 10. When did they return home?

Lesson 66

ABLATIVE CASE

370. The Ablative has the functions of three originally distinct cases—the true Ablative or from-case, the Instrumental or with-case, and the Locative or place-where-case.

It gives additional information about the mode of the action of the verb, in addition to those presented by the direct and indirect object. Its sphere of action is very great, since it can express the source, cause, instrument, time, place, manner, circumstances, of the action of the verb, as well as the point from which motion takes place.

We may detail the uses of the Ablative as follows:

TRUE ABLATIVE USES

Ablative of Separation

371. Verbs or adjectives denoting separation take the ablative with or without a preposition. The preposition is usually omitted with words of freeing, depriving, and lacking.

tē ab eō līberō, *I free you from him.*
oppugnātiōne dēsistunt, *they cease from the siege.*
omnibus rēbus ēgēre, *to be in want of everything.*

Ablative of Agent

372. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **a** or **ab**.

ab senātū amīcus appellātus erat, *he had been called friend by the senate.*

a Caesare accūsātus est, *he was accused by Caesar.*

Ablative of Comparison

373. Comparative adjectives are regularly followed by **quam** and a substantive in the same case as the first thing compared. However, the second thing compared may be put in the ablative and the **quam** omitted.

nihil est virtūte amābilius, *nothing is more lovely than virtue.*

patria mihi vītā cārior est, *to me my fatherland is dearer than life.*

374. The comparatives **plūs, minus, amplius,** and **longius** may take the ablative, but they usually have the force of **plūs quam, minus quam, amplius quam,** and **longius quam.**

tēcum plūs annum vīxit, *he lived with you more than a year.*

Ablative of Cause[1]

375. The Ablative is used to denote Cause. The Ablative of Cause is sometimes used with a preposition, **ab, dē,** or **ex.**

ille timōre, ego rīsū corruī, *he collapsed from fear, I from laughter.*

multa glōriae cupiditāte fēcit, *he did many things because of his love of glory.*

ab īrā, *on account of anger.*

376. VOCABULARY

amābilis, e, *worthy of love, lovely.*
amplius, *more.*
amplus, a, um, *great, glorious.*
corruō, ere, uī, ——— *fall down, collapse.*
dēsistō, ere, stitī, ——— *cease.*
dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., *disagreement.*
egeō, ēre, uī, ——— *need, lack.*
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *drive out.*
nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *be born.*
obsidiō, ōnis, f., *siege.*
occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *kill.*

[1] This ablative is partly Separative and partly Instrumental.

oppugnātiō, ōnis, f., *siege.*
possessiō, ōnis, f., *possession.*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel.*
rīsus, ūs, m., *laughter.*
septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*
servitūs, ūtis, f., *servitude, bondage.*
vīgintī, *twenty,* indecl.

EXERCISES

377. 1. Rōmānī auxiliō maximē egent. 2. Sociī dissensiōne dēstitērunt. 3. Eōs ā barbarīs līberābimus. 4. Pompeius ā Caesare repulsus est. 5. Patria mihi vītā cārior est. 6. Plūs mīlle hostēs possessiōnibus nostrīs expulsī sunt. 7. Impetum hostium repellere dissēnsiōnibus nōn possumus. 8. Quae mulier est melior mātre? 9. Nēmō hostēs ab hīs mūnītiōnibus prohibēre poterit. 10. Illud oppidum obsidiōne līberāvimus. 11. Plus vīgintī hominēs occīsī sunt. 12. Diū atque ācriter ā nostrīs pugnātum est. 13. Quid melius est quam virtūs? 14. Eōs ā servitūte līberēmus.

378. 1. The enemy were driven from their camp by the Romans. 2. What is more glorious than a great victory? 3. For many causes the fortification collapsed. 4. The horses were in need of forage. 5. More than a thousand infantry men were killed in that battle. 6. Many men will be freed from bondage by us. 7. Because of a disagreement seven hundred soldiers withdrew from the army. 8. We are especially in need of grain.

Lesson 67

ABLATIVE CASE, Continued

INSTRUMENTAL USES

Ablative of Accompaniment

379. Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum.**

cum Pānsā vīxī, *I have lived with Pansa.*
nōbīscum hostēs contendērunt, *the enemy fought with us.*

Ablative of Manner

380. The ablative is used to denote the manner in which an act is performed. If the noun is unaccompanied by an adjective, the preposition **cum** is also used.

reliquiās cum cūrā exsecūtus est, *he followed up the remainder carefully.*
fierī nūllō pactō potest, *it can be done in no way.*

Ablative of Quality

381. The ablative of a noun modified by an adjective is used to denote a quality. This construction may be used attributively or predicatively.

vir magnā virtūte, *a man of great courage.*
statūrā fuit humilī, *he was of low stature.*

Ablative of Means

382. The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument by which an act is done.

exercitus interitus est ferrō, *the army was destroyed by the sword.*

383. The Ablative of Means is also used with the following:

(a) The deponents **ūtor,** *I use;* **fruor,** *I enjoy;* **fungor,** *I perform;* **potior,** *I am master of;* and **vescor,** *I feed on.* **vītā fruitur,** *he enjoys life.* **lacte et carne vescēbantur,** *they lived on milk and meat.*

(b) **Opus est** and **usus est,** *there is need.* **duce opus est,** *there is need of a leader.*

(c) Verbs meaning *to fill,* and adjectives meaning *full.* **fossam aggere explent,** *they fill the trench with earth.*

384. VOCABULARY

addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead on, impel.*
conficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *exhaust.*
dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss, damage.*
dignitās, ātis, f., *dignity, rank.*
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *sally.*
fruor, ī, fructus sum, *enjoy.*
fungor, ī, functus sum, *perform, execute.*
gravitās, ātis, f., *heaviness, violence.*
lacessō, ere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *harass.*
lapis, idis, m., *stone.*
nocturnus, a, um, *at night.*
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come, arrive.*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *take possession of, acquire.*
ratiō, ōnis, f., *reason.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *take back;* with reflexive **se,** *to retreat.*
ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use.*
vescor, vescī, *feed, eat.*

EXERCISES

385. 1. Hic homo magnā gravitāte loquitur. 2. Cum exercitū Rōmam sē recēpit. 3. Ad urbem vōbīscum properābimus. 4. Magnā celeritāte opus est. 5. Equī pābulō vescuntur. 6. Vir magnā dignitāte fuit. 7. Exercitum cum magnō dētrīmentō contrā hostēs addūxit. 8. Nāvēs hīs causīs ad portum sē recipere coāctae sunt. 9. Aestāte maximē fruimur. 10. Fossās lapidibus complēbunt. 11. Impetū nocturnō facile castrīs potītī sunt. 12. Helvētiī summā celeritāte ad fīnēs Gallōrum pervēnērunt.

386. 1. The envoys spoke with dignity. 2. Because of the many attacks the army was exausted. 3. The enemy advanced against the town with great loss. 4. He executed the commands of the leader quickly. 5. The inhabitants of the town harassed our men with stones. 6. Because of his desire for glory he did many bad things. 7. They were unable to withdraw without great loss. 8. Let us enjoy the many things of life in a good manner.

Lesson 68

ABLATIVE CASE, Continued

INSTRUMENTAL USES, Continued

Ablative Absolute

387. Two words in the ablative, usually a noun or pronoun and a participle, are often used in a loose connection with a sentence to express any one of a number of ideas. This is called the Ablative Absolute.

Two nouns or an adjective and a noun may also be used in the ablative absolute construction.

388. The main ideas expressed by the Ablative Absolute are the following:

(a) Time.

Lepidō et Tullō cōnsulibus, *when Lepidus and Tullus were consuls* or *in the consulship of Lepidus and Tullus.*

(b) Cause.

nūllō adversante rēgnum obtinuit, *since no one opposed him, he secured the throne.*

(c) Manner.

incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit, *with his horse at full speed he rushed upon the enemy.*

(d) Condition.

omnes virtūtēs iacent, voluptāte dominante, *all virtues lie prostrate, if pleasure reigns supreme.*

(e) Concession.

perditīs omnibus rēbus pugnābant, *although everything was lost, they fought on.*

Ablative of Price

389. The ablative is used with verbs of buying and selling to denote the price.

dēnāriīs tribus aestimāvit, *he valued it at three denarii.*

Ablative of Degree of Difference

390. The ablative is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to show the degree of difference.

ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt, *they made the month longer by a day.*

Ablative of Specification

391. The ablative of specification is used to denote that in respect to which something is or is not true.

hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine, *men not in fact but in name.*

392. The ablative of specification is used with **dignus,** *worthy,* and **indignus,** *unworthy.*

amīcī dignī amīcitiā, *friends worthy of friendship.*

393. VOCABULARY

adversō, āre, āvī, ātus, *oppose.*
aestimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *determine, estimate.*
ante, adv., *before.*
antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *precede.*
coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
dignus, a, um, *worthy.*
emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*
indignus, a, um, *unworthy.*
Gallus, ī, m., *a Gaul.*
nihilō, abl., *by nothing.*
paulō, abl., *by a little.*
post, adv., *afterwards.*
salvus, a, um, *safe, sound.*
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose;* of ships, *unmoor;* **naves solvere,** *set sail.*
talentum, ī, n., *a talent* (not a coin, but a certain number of pounds of gold or silver equivalent to about $1200.00).
vēndō, ere, vēndidī, vēnditus, *sell.*

EXERCISES

394. 1. M.[1] Messallā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus coniūrātiōnem fecērunt 2. Multīs adversantibus flūmen trānsībimus. 3. Vivō Caesare, rēs pūblica salva erat. 4. Servum magnō pretiō ēmit. 5. Illōs agrōs decem talentīs vēndidit. 6. Haec turris decem pedibus altior est. 7. Hīc homō paulō quam ille altior est. 8. Rōmānī omnibus populīs Italiae virtūte praestābant. 9. Mīlitēs quī fortiter dīmicāvērunt honōre dignī sunt. 10. Nēmō Caesarem auctōritāte superābat. 11. Ventō magnō, nāvēs solvunt. 12. Caesare duce, Rōmānī agrōs Gallōrum vexāvērunt et oppida eōrum cēpērunt.

395. 1. Although the winds opposed, they tried to set sail. 2. In the consulship of M. Messala and M. Piso a few conspiracies took place. 3. Since no one opposed them they set out at once. 4. He will sell this building for a talent. 5. The tower is ten feet higher than the fortification. 6. These men whom you have seen are worthy of friendship. 7. Our soldiers surpassed all in courage. 8. When all the enemy had been overcome, the general returned to winter quarters.

[1] M. = Marcus.

Lesson 69

Ablative Case, Continued

LOCATIVE USES

Ablative of Place

396. The place where a thing is or is done is usually expressed by the ablative with **in.**

in urbe habitat, *he lives in the city.*

Names of towns, however—except singulars of the First and Second Declensions take the ablative without a preposition.

Cūmīs, *at Cumae.* **Carthagine,** *at Carthage.*

397. Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ab, de,** or **ex.**[1]

ab Italiā profectus est, *he set out from Italy.*

Names of towns, however; **domō,** *from home;* **rūre,** *from the country,* use the ablative without a preposition.

Calibus profectus est, *he set out from Cales.*

[1] Place from which is, strictly speaking, a "True Ablative," but it is taken up here for the sake of convenience.

Ablative of Time

398. The time when or within which anything takes place is expressed by the ablative.

superiōre aestāte, *in the previous summer.*
proximīs comitiīs, *at the last election.*

399. Extent of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative. The accusative is usual, however.

tōtā nocte iērunt, *they went during the whole night.*

Locative Case

400. The Locative Case denotes place where. It occurs regularly in the singular names of towns and small islands of the First and Second Declensions, and also in a few special words, like **domī,** *at home;* **humī,** *on the ground;* **bellī** and **militiae,** *in war;* **rūrī,** *in the country.*

Rōmae, *at Rome.* **Corinthī,** *at Corinth.*

401. VOCABULARY

Aprīlis, e, adj., *of April.*
dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātus, *despair.*
habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *dwell, reside.*
kalendae, ārum, f., *kalends* (first of the month).
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *restore.*
trīduum, ī, n., *three days.*
tertius, a, um, *third.*
vigilia, ae, f., *watch* (of the night).

EXERCISES

402. 1. In illā urbe duōs annōs habitābāmus. 2. In exercitū Caesaris saepe erant dissēnsiōnes. 3. Rōmā in Galliam contendam. 4. Rōmam tertiō diē redībo. 5. Tertiā vigiliā ē castrīs profectī sumus. 6. Kalendīs Aprīlibus coniūrātiōnem repperērunt. 7. Rōmae aedificia pulchra sunt. 8. Rōmā Corinthum exercitus contendet. 9. Athenīs trīduum morābimur. 10. Eō tempore cīvēs omnēs dē suā salūte dēspērābant.

403. 1. They will delay three days in Athens. 2. On the island are large trees and pretty flowers. 3. On the first (Kalends) of April I saw you and your friends at Rome. 4. Let us hasten from Rome into Gaul. 5. On that night we will return to Corinth. 6. At the first watch the consul set out with all his troops. 7. In what year were you consul? 8. For many days we despaired of our safety. 9. In a short time he restored the town and villages which he had destroyed.

Lesson 70

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES

404. Adjectives and participles are often used as substantives in the plural. The masculine denotes persons, the neuter denotes things.

nostrī, *our men.*

varium et mūtābile semper femina, *woman is always a variable and changeable thing.*

bona, *good things.*

405. Adjectives are often used where English uses the adverb.

invītus fēcī, *I did it unwillingly.*

Comparatives and Superlatives

406. Comparatives and Superlatives are often used when they do not denote a definite comparison; the comparative having the idea of *rather somewhat, too;* the superlative signifying *very.*

senectūs est nātūrā loquācior, *old age is by nature rather talkative.*

vir fortissimus, *a very brave man.*

407. The superlative is used with **quam,** or **quam** and a form of **possum,** to denote the highest degree possible.

quam matūrrimē, *as early as possible.*

quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam contendit, *he hastens into Gaul by the longest possible marches.*

408. When two qualities are compared, both adjectives or adverbs are in the comparative, or, if **magis** is used, both are kept in the positive.

verior quam grātior, *more true than agreeable.*

Celer disertus magis est quam sapiēns, *Celer is more eloquent than wise.*

409. Certain adjectives are used in agreement to denote a part of an object: as **medius,** *middle of;* **reliquus,** *rest of;* **extrēmus,** *last part of;* **īmus,** *bottom of;* **summus,** *top of.*

summus mōns, *the top of the mountain.*

in colle mediō, *on the middle of the hill.*

410. VOCABULARY

abeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *go away.*

crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *believe.*

extrēmus, a, um, *extreme, end of.*
hiems, is, f., *winter.*
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *exhort.*
invītus, a, um, *unwilling, reluctant.*
loquax, ācis, *talkative, loquacious.*
mātūrus, a, um, *right, proper, speedy.*
ōrātor, ōris, m., *orator.*
plērīque, aeque, aque, *most.*
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *advance.*
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, *answer, reply.*
sapiens, entis, *wise.*
senectus, ūtis, f., *old age.*

EXERCISES

411. 1. Nostrī fortēs sunt. 2. Plēraque illī placent. 3. Invītī haec crēdunt. 4. Eruptiō nostrōrum erat subitissima. 5. Via gravior erat. 6. Numerus mīlitum quam maximus sit. 7. Haec fēmina pulchrior quam grātior est. 8. Ille ōrātor loquax magis est quam sapiens. 9. In summō colle nostrī fortiter resistēbant. 10. Multī mediā nocte ex castrīs ēgressī sunt.

412. 1. The enemy made the attack unwillingly. 2. Our (men)[1] will not believe such (things). 3. The march was rather difficult. 4. The trees on the island are very beautiful. 5. Such people are more talkative than wise. 6. On the middle of the mountain is a building. 7. We will set out with the longest possible marches.

REVIEW

413. 1. Caesar et Servīlius cōnsulēs creābantur. 2. Cōnsulēs, ducēs exercitūs magnam auctōritātem habent. 3. Timorēs mīlitum in castrīs maximī erant. 4. Barbarōrum illōs miseret. 5. Caesar fēminīs et līberīs semper parcēbat. 6. Ille nōbīs magnō usuī erat. 7. Nos miserōs! Templa aedificiaque nostra incendunt. 8. Magistrī nōs multa ēdocēbunt. 9. Nōnne Caesar Rōmam redībit? 10. Plūs vīgintī hominēs aderunt. 11. Hīc homo magnā celeritāte ad urbem properābit. 12. Illōs agrōs magnō pretiō vēndidit. 13. Mīlitibus dīmicantibus, ille Rōmam properābat.

---

[1] Do not translate words in parentheses.

Lesson 71

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS

414. The ending of the verb denotes the person. Therefore personal pronouns are expressed as subjects of verbs only in case of emphasis or contrast.

ego rēgēs ēiēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis, *I drove out kings, you are bringing in tyrants.*

415. The genitive singular of the personal pronouns (i.e., **meī, tuī**) and of the reflexive (i.e., **suī**) is usually used as an objective genitive. The possessive adjectives **meus, tuus,** and **suus** are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive.

416. The genitives plural **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used only as objective genitives; the forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** as genitives of the whole.

habētis ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī, *you have a leader mindful of you, forgetful of himself.*
nēmō vestrum, *no one of you.*

417. The possessive adjectives (commonly called pronouns) are usually used only for the purpose of clearness.

mātrem amō, *I love my mother.*
tuam mātrem amō, *I love your mother.*

Alius and Alter

418. **Alius** means *another* of a group of more than two. **Alter** means either *one* or *the other* of two, or the *second* in a series.

The phrases **alius . . . alius,** and **alter . . . alter** are used correlatively, meaning respectively *one . . . another, the one . . . the other.*

The plural **aliī . . . aliī** is translated *some . . . others.*

dīvitiās aliī praepōnunt, aliī potentiam, *some prefer wealth, others power.*

419. VOCABULARY

coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus, *hurl.*
differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus, *differ.*
exitus, ūs, m., *exit, passage.*
fīdūcia, ae, f., *confidence.*
institūtum, ī, n., *institution.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
memor, oris, *mindful.*

mereor, ērī, meritus sum, *deserve.*
misericordia, ae, f., *pity.*
perdō, ere, didī, ditus, *lose.*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus, *press, crowd.*
subeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *approach.*

EXERCISES

420. 1. Ducis nostrī laus nōbīs grāta erat. 2. Multī nostrum morientur. 3. Omnes nōs misericordiā vestrī movēbāmur. 4. Semper este nostrī memorēs. 5. Pater maximam laudem merētur. 6. Quis plūs quam māter tua laudem merētur? 7. Hōrum fīliōrum alter occīsus,[1] alter captus est. 8. Aliud loquitur, aliud sentit. 9. Omnēs populī īnstitūtīs atque lēgibus inter sē differunt. 10. Mīlitēs in castrīs sēsē premēbant.

421. 1. I will withdraw at once, you will advance. 2. We were greatly moved by your recollection of us. 3. No one of us will ever deserve such praise. 4. Not even at that time did any one of you withdraw. 5. The ships of the enemy crowded themselves in the passage of the harbor. 6. Some will hurl javelins, others will approach the fortification. 7. One has been killed, the other has been freed. 8. On that very night this captive fled to his own (people).

Lesson 72

GENERAL REMARKS ON MOODS

By a mood is meant a special form assumed by the verb to indicate the particular shade of thought that an author wishes to convey to his readers, or a speaker to his hearers.

I. Thus the indicative mood, as its name implies, is used to point out (**indicat**) a fact, stated by the author on his own responsibility. The fact is, was, or shall be true in itself, whether anyone ever notices it or not; e.g., *he is well, he was well, he will be well.*

II. The imperative mood is used not to point out a fact, but to command or will a fact; e.g., *go ye.*

III. The difference between these two moods is clear. The infinitive mood is hardly a mood at all, but rather the verb used as a noun, e.g., **vidēre,** *the act of seeing.* In Latin, however, it is very widely used as the mood of indirect discourse.

---

[1] *Est* is to be supplied from the following *captus est.*

IV. The subjunctive is the mood which causes the most trouble in the study of Latin. In Latin it has many varied uses, while in English it hardly exists at all.

Thus in Latin the subjunctive is used not to point out a fact, but to add to the simple statement of the indicative some further idea of *uncertainty* or *possibility*. In general it is used to express something which we regard as a mere conception of the mind, such as

(a) That which we purpose or wish to be a fact.

(b) That which we refer to as the result of another fact.

(c) That which we state on authority other than our own.

It should be remembered that conjunctions do not govern mood. The choice of the mood should be made chiefly on a consideration of the sense of the passage, and not because of the presence of certain conjunctions.

All the many uses of the subjunctive which will follow may be summed up under the foregoing three general heads.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

Hortatory Subjunctive

422. The subjunctive is used to express an exhortation. The negative is **nē.**

amēmus patriam, *let us love our fatherland.*
nē eāmus, *let us not go.*

Deliberative Subjunctive

423. The subjunctive is used in questions of a purely rhetorical nature, implying the impossibility of the thing mentioned and expecting no answer. The present tense is used for present time, the imperfect, rarely the perfect, for past time. The negative is **non.**

quid igitur faciam? *what then shall I do?*
quid facerem? *what was I to do?*
ego nōn venīrem? *was I not to come?*

424. VOCABULARY

adeō, adv., *so much, to such a degree.*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, *settle.*
cūra, ae, f., *trouble, care.*
cūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *care for, take care of.*
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *let go.*
disciplīna, ae, f., *discipline.*
laedō, ere, laesī, laesus, *hurt, injure.*
nē, *not.*

retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *retain.*
sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take.*
tegō, ere, texī, tectus, *cover.*

EXERCISES

425. 1. Omnēs cūrās hodiē dīmittāmus! 2. Mōrēs et disciplīnam maiōrum nostrōrum semper retineāmus! 3. Nēmō fēminās aut līberōs laedat! 4. Gallī in prōvinciā Rōmānā nē cōnsīdant! 5. Ego nōn omnia tegerem? 6. Quid igitur loquātur? 7. Quid facerēmus? 8. Germānōs ā Rhēnō prohibeāmus! 9. Rōmam contendāmus!

426. 1. Let us not let this opportunity go! 2. Let them take care of all their own affairs! 3. Let us all return home! 4. What were they to say? 5. Shall we not defend the fatherland? 6. Let us never forget our friends!

Lesson 73

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

Continued

Optative Subjunctive

427. The subjunctive is used to express a wish. The negative is **nē.**

The present tense is used where the wish is represented as possible, i.e., in future time; the imperfect for a wish unattained in present time; and the pluperfect for a wish unattained in past time.

The present tense may be preceded by **utinam;** the imperfect and pluperfect are regularly preceded by **utinam: (utinam) sint beātī,** *may they be blessed.*

utinam Clōdius vīveret, *would that Clodius were alive.*
utinam nē vēnisset, *would that he had not come.*

Potential Subjunctive

428. The potential subjunctive is used to express ideas set forth by English *may, should* or *would;* i.e., possibilities, softened assertions, etc. The negative is **nōn.**

The present and perfect denote a present or future possibility; the imperfect a past possibility.

hōc vōbīs incrēdibile videātur, *this may seem to you incredible.*
nōn facile dīxerim, *I could not easily say.*
hoc quis arbitrārētur, *who would have thought this?*

429. VOCABULARY

comprehendō, ere, dī, sus, *seize.*
cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *use up.*
dō, dăre, dedī, datus, *give, render.*
impūne, adv., *with impunity.*
intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *know, understand.*
iūs, iūris, n., *right, power.*
opera, ae, f., *assistance.*
patior, ī, passus sum, *suffer.*
paullātim, *little by little, gradually.*
praeclārus, a, um, *splendid, grand.*
utinam, affirmative particle.

EXERCISES

430. 1. Omnēs suspīciōnēs inter amīcōs āvertantur! 2. Utinam eōs vīdissēmus! 3. Utinam omnēs salvī domum redeāmus! 4. Fortūnam facilius reperiās quam retineās. 5. Omnia in eō locō vidērēs. 6. Quis talia arbitrētur? 7. Utinam nē opēs suās cōnsūmpsisset! 8. Utinam talia nē passī essent! 9. Utinam hanc aestātem in hīs operibus nē cōnsūmpsissēmus!

431. 1. They may approve your plans. 2. Would that they had given me an opportunity! 3. You might have found many dangers there. 4. May we never leave our fatherland! 5. Would that he had not abandoned his duty! 6. He may see his parents in Rome. 7. May they bring us assistance at once!

Lesson 74

COMMANDS

Affirmative

432. Affirmative commands or requests are expressed by the imperative.

proficīscere; ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs, *depart; take out with you all your companions.*
mihi ignōsce, *pardon me.*

Negative

433. Negative commands or prohibition may be expressed in any one of three ways.

(a) **nōlī** or **nōlīte** with the infinitive.

(b) **cavē** or **cavēte** (**nē**) with the present subjunctive.
(c) perfect subjunctive with **nē**.
nōlī hoc putāre, *don't think this.*
cavē (**nē**) **fēstīnēs,** *do not be in a hurry.*
nē audīveris, *hear not.*

434. VOCABULARY

dictum, ī, n., *word, utterance.*
ērudio, īre, īvī or **iī, ītus,** *instruct, teach.*
familiāris, e, *intimate, familiar.*
fīniō, īre, īvī or **iī, ītus,** *limit, bound, end.*
flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*
ignoscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus, *pardon, excuse.*
ingenium, ī, n., *talent, natural disposition.*
lacrimae, ārum, f., plu., *tears.*
lēniō, īre, īvī, or **iī, ītus,** *mollify, mitigate.*
ornātus, ūs, m., *ornament, dress.*
plōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *weep, deplore.*

EXERCISES

435. 1. Nōbīs, mīlitēs, operam date. 2. Relinquite hunc locum statim, et domum redīte! 3. Omnibus quī adsunt ignōscite. 4. Rōmam nōlī festināre. 5. Dicta tua nē fīnīveris. 6. Cavē plōrēs calamitātēs. 7. Labōrēs captivōrum lēnīte. 8. Talia nē ērudīveris. 9. Omnēs ornātūs dīmitte.

436. 1. Pardon all the soldiers who were absent. 2. Excuse his words as much as possible. 3. Do not advance to the town. 4. Let them mitigate the labors of those men. 5. Let us excuse the weeping even of men. 6. Do not withdraw from that place now.

Lesson 75

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

437. Sequence of Tenses

The use of the various tenses of the subjunctive in independent sentences has been given under each of the different kinds of independent subjunctives.

The use of the tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses depends on the following laws known as Sequence of Tenses.

The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are divided into two classes; primary or principal, and secondary or historical.

Under primary or principal tenses come the present, future, present perfect, and future perfect indicative; and the present and perfect subjunctive.

Under secondary or historical are the imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect indicative; and the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

Note that the perfect indicative has two uses, as a present perfect denoting action just completed in present time; and as a historical perfect denoting definite past action.

In subordinate clauses which take the subjunctive, only primary tenses may follow primary tenses in the main clause; and only secondary tenses may follow secondary tenses in the main clause.

The present and imperfect subjunctive denote incomplete action, the perfect and pluperfect completed action, just as in the indicative.

438. Thus indirect questions always take the subjunctive in Latin, and the various rules of Sequence of Tenses are illustrated by the following examples.

Primary or Principal Sequence

(a) Incomplete Action in the Subordinate Clause.
rogō quid faciās, *I ask what you are doing.*
rogābō quid faciās, *I shall ask what you are doing.*
rogāverō quid faciās, *I shall have asked what you are doing.*
(b) Completed Action in the Subordinate Clause.
rogō quid fēcerīs, *I ask what you have done.*
rogābō quid fēceris, *I shall ask what you have done.*
rogāverō quid fēcerīs, *I shall have asked what you have done.*

Secondary or Historical Sequence

(a) Incomplete Action in the Subordinate Clause.
rogābam quid facerēs, *I asked what you were doing.*
rogāvī quid facerēs, *I asked what you were doing.*
rogāveram quid facerēs, *I had asked what you were doing.*
(b) Completed Action in the Subordinate Clause.
rogābam quid fēcissēs, *I asked what you had done.*
rogāvī quid fēcissēs, *I asked what you had done.*
rogāveram quid fēcissēs, *I had asked what you had done.*

439. **VOCABULARY**

coniungō, ere iūnxī, iūnctus, *unite.*
consuētūdō, inis, f., *custom, habit.*

Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus* (a man's name).
exsistō, ere, exstitī, exstitum, *arise.*
magnitūdo, inis, f., *size, extent.*
mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt.*
pietās, ātis, f., *affection, piety.*
remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
sciō, īre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*
societās, ātis, f., *association, alliance.*
ūtilitās, ātis, f., *advantage.*

EXERCISES

440. 1. Sciunt quae exstiterint. 2. Vidēbāmus quās mūnītiōnēs hostēs facerent. 3. In illō locō trēs hōrās remanēte. 4. Scient quid factum sit. 5. Castra in locīs superiōribus pone. 6. Duōs exercitūs nē coniūnxeris. 7. Scīvimus quae legiō castra dēfendisset. 8. Nōn scīvimus in quibus castrīs mīlitēs Rōmānī essent. 9. Videāmus quae nūntiī nūntient. 10. Utinam operā tuā ūsus essem!

441. 1. Do not tell the extent of the revolt. 2. Let us see what the alliance of the Gauls has accomplished. 3. The advantages of an alliance should be many. 4. We knew what disasters the enemy had suffered. 5. They will know at once what the general thinks. 6. They knew what advantages they had received from the state. 7. We should scarcely believe you.

Lesson 76

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

442. Purpose is usually expressed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **ut** if affirmative, by **nē** if negative.

The rules of sequence of tenses are followed strictly as in all subordinate subjunctive clauses.

oportet ēsse, ut vīvas, nōn vīvere ut edas, *you should eat, that you may live, not live that you may eat.*

portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī iniūriam acciperent, *he closed the gate, in order that the townspeople might not receive any injury.*

443. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to express purpose.

lēgātum mittit, quī Caesarem videat, *he sends his lieutenant to see Caesar.*

habēbam quō cōnfugerem, *I had a place where I could take refuge.*

444. When a purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, it is always introduced by **quō.**

adiūtā mē, quō id fiāt facilius, *help me in order that this may be done more easily.*

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.—CAUSAL CLAUSES

Clauses of Characteristic

445. When the antecedent of a relative pronoun is indefinite, and the clause expresses some quality or characteristic of it, the subjunctive is used.

secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent, *storms followed which kept our men in camp.*

446. The Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such words and phrases as **tālis, sōlus, dignus, indignus, sunt quī, nemo est qui, unus est qui,** etc.

sunt quī dīcant, *there are those who say.*

ūnus est sōlus inventus quī dissidēret, *only one man was found who disagreed.*

Causal Clauses

447. Clauses introduced by **quod, quia,** and **quoniam,** *because,* take the indicative if the reason is given as a fact and on the authority of the writer or speaker himself; if not given as a fact or given on the authority of some one else, the subjunctive is used.

quia nātūra mūtārī nōn potest, idcircō vērae amīcitiae sempiternae sunt, *because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.*

noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset, *Themistocles used to walk in public at night, because (he said) he could not get to sleep.*

448. **Cum** meaning *since* takes the subjunctive.

Haeduī cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt, *since the Haedui could not defend themselves, they sent deputies to Caesar.*

449. VOCABULARY

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, *approach.*
commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change.*
cōnsistō, ere, cōnstitī, *consist.*
cum, *because, since.*

dēspiciō, ere, exī, ectus, *despise.*
iūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *swear, take oath.*
nē, *lest, that . . . not.*
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *blockade.*
paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness, small number.*
quō, *in order that;* regularly used when followed by a comparative.
quod, *because.*
quoniam, *inasmuch as,* conj.
ūnus, a, um, *one, alone.*
ut, *that, in order that.*

EXERCISES

450. Caesar in Galliam festīnāvit, nē tantae nātiōnēs coniungerentur. 2. Omnēs remanēbunt ut suspīciōnem timōris vītent. 3. Oppidum mūnīvimus quō hostibus facilius resisterēmus. 4. Nūntium Rōmam mīsit quī omnia nūntiāret. 5. Sunt quī tālia dīcant. 6. Multī sunt quī haec sciant. 7. Hostēs acriter pugnābant, quod fēminae et līberī eōs accendēbant. 8. Mīlitēs ad Caesarem vēnērunt quod lēgātōs dēspicerent. 9. Germānī appropinquant, cum Rōmānōs propter paucitātem dēspiciant. 10. Magna commūtātiō rērum facta est quoniam Caesar vēnit.

451. 1. They are approaching the camp that they may attack it. 2. We fortified the place that it might be defended more easily. 3. There are soldiers who always fight bravely. 4. The Germans sent envoys to ask for peace. 5. Because they saw the great number of men they did not attack. 6. The leader accuses his soldiers because (=on the ground that) they did not resist the enemy. 7. There was no one who did not take oath.

Lesson 77

CLAUSES OF RESULT.—CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

Result Clauses

452. Result is regularly expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut.** The negative is **nōn.**

sunt ita multī, ut cōs carcer capere nōn possit, *they are so many that a prison can not hold them.*

Concessive Clauses

453. Clauses introduced by **quamquam,** *although,* take the indicative.

quamquam festīnās, nōn est mora longa, *although you are in a hurry, the delay is not long.*

454. **quamvīs** and **cum,** meaning *although,* take the subjunctive.

senectūs quamvīs nōn sit gravis, tamen aufert viriditātem, *although old age is not burdensome, nevertheless it takes away one's energy.*

cum prīmī ōrdinēs concidissent, tamen reliquī resistēbant, *although the first ranks gave way, yet the rest resisted.*

455. VOCABULARY

ardeō, ēre, -rsī, -rsus, *take fire, kindle.*
carcer, eris, m., *prison, jail.*
comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, *find out.*
famulus, ī, m., *servant, attendant.*
festus, a, um, *solemn, festive.*
impendeō, ēre, ———, ———, *overhang, threaten.*
ordo, inis, m., *order, rank* or *line* (of soldiers)
perpaucus, a, um, *very little, very few.*
renovo, āre, āvī, ātus, *renew.*
sublevō, āre, āvī, ātus, *relieve.*
tam, *so* (of degree).
viriditās, ātis, f., *freshness, vigor.*

EXERCISES

456. 1. Nōn tam barbarī sunt, ut haec nōn sciant. 2. Rōmānī angustiās obsidēbunt, ut hostēs ex fīnibus suīs exīre nōn possint. 3. Quamquam nostrī proelium renovāvērunt, Gallī non discessērunt. 4. Quamvīs in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret, impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt. 5. Ducēs sociōs accūsant quod ab eīs nōn subleventur. 6. Quamquam latro in carcere erat, omnēs timēbant. 7. Impetus statim factus est ut perpaucī hostium fugerent. 8. Gallī castra obsēderant nē nūntiī exīre possent. 9. Adulēscentēs viriditātem habent quae nōn est in senectūte. 10. Cum causam comperire nōn possent, aedificia omnia subitō ardēbant.

457. 1. Who is there that (=who) is so foolish? 2. Romans are so brave that they fear no one. 3. Let us make the attack suddenly so that the enemy will be greatly terrified. 4. Although the town was well fortified, the people did not defend it. 5. Such words were spoken by the delegates that Caesar dismissed them at once. 6. The general decided to send delegates to him to ask for a conference.

Lesson 78

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

Temporal Clauses with **cum**

458. **Cum,** meaning *when,* takes the indicative if the clause refers to present or future time.

Rōmae videor esse cum tuās litterās legō, *I seem to be in Rome when I read your letter.*

459. When **cum,** meaning *when,* refers to past time, the indicative is used when the time is merely defined; but the subjunctive is used when some circumstance connected with it is stated.

The difference is the same as that between the relative clause of fact and the relative clause of characteristic.

This distinction, however, is not always followed strictly by Roman writers.

eō cum vēnī praetor quiescēbat, *when I got there, the praetor was resting.*

cum inambulārem in xystō, ad mē Brūtus vēnit, *while I was walking in the portico, Brutus came to me.*

Temporal Clauses with **postquam, ubi,** etc.

460. **Postquam,** *after;* **ubi, ut,** *when;* and **simul ac** (**simul atque**), **cum primum,** *as soon as,* referring to a past occurrence, take the indicative, usually the perfect.

postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit, *after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*

simul atque intrōductus est, rem cōnfēcit, *as soon as he was brought in, he finished the affair.*

461. VOCABULARY

animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus, *notice.*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *learn, become acquainted with.*
cum, *when,* conjunction.
ēiciō, ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, *thrust out;* **sē eicere,** *rush forth.*
exeō, īre, iī, exitūrus, *go out, go forth.*
factiō, ōnis, f., *faction.*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice, delight in.*
incendium, ī, n., *fire, conflagration.*
ōmen, inis, n., *foreboding.*
petō, ere, īvī (**iī**), **ītus,** *seek, request.*
postquam, *after,* conjunction.

postrēmō, adv., *at last, in the end.*
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *inquire, seek.*
simul ac (atque), *as soon as.*
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *withdraw.*

EXERCISES

462. 1. Postquam mīlitēs id animadvertērunt, ē castrīs exiērunt. 2. Cum omnia cognōvit, sē ēicere voluit. 3. Simul ac ōmen malōrum cognōvērunt, pācem petīvērunt. 4. Cum Caesar ad oppidum accēderet, populus statim sē subdūcēbat. 5. Ubi dux e mīlitibus quaesīvit, incendiī causam repperit. 6. Cum Caesar Rōmam vēnisset, duae factiōnēs in Gallīs factae sunt. 7. Caesar cum veniet, omnia cognōscet. 8. Postrēmō ut mīlitēs nostrī ex castrīs sē ēiēcērunt, hostēs ex agrīs exībant. 9. Cum hōc dīxisset, omnes gāvīsī sunt.

463. 1. After the soldiers crossed the river, they pitched camp. 2. When he learned everything, he went away. 3. As soon as the cavalry rush forth from the camp, the enemy withdraw into the forest. 4. All will rejoice greatly, when they notice these things. 5. When Caesar comes, he will seek the cause of the conflagration. 6. As soon as the women and children withdrew, they made the attack.

REVIEW

464. 1. Eā ipsā nocte hīc captīvus ad suōs fūgit. 2. Alius vōs laudābit, alius culpābit. 3. Disciplinae maiōrum meminerīmus. 4. Quid igitur dīcerēmus? 5. Utinam hanc aestātem in hīs operibus nē cōnsūmpsissēmus. 6. Vestrīs lēgātīs, mīlitēs, operam date. 7. Nē calamitātēs plōrāveris. 8. Nōnnullī remanēbant ut suspīciōnem timōris vītārent. 9. Videāmus quae puerī dīcant. 10. Impetus statim fiet nē hostēs fugiant.

Lesson 79

TEMPORAL CLAUSES, Continued

465. Clauses introduced by **dum, donec, quoad,** and **quam diū.**

Dōnec, quoad, and **quam diū,** meaning *as long as, while,* take the indicative, usually the same tense as that of the main verb.

hostēs populī Rōmānī fuimus, quoad nostra arma nōs tūtārī poterant, *we were enemies of the Roman people, as long as our arms could protect us.*

Dum, meaning *as long as, while,* usually takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the main verb.

Dum, dōnec, and **quoad,** meaning *until,* take the subjunctive when referring to time after that of the main verb, but the indicative when referring to time before that of the main verb.

dōnec rediit, mānsimus, *we remained until he came.*
dum veniat ibi opperībēris, *you shall wait here until he comes.*

466. VOCABULARY

adversārius, iī, m., *adversary.*
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *do.*
anima, ae, f., *air, the breath of life.*
communiō, īre, īvī or **iī, ītus,** *fortify strongly.*
convīva, ae, m., or f., *guest.*
dōnec, *until.*
dum, *while, until, as long as.*
expectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *wait for.*
itaque, *and thus, therefore.*
iūcundus, a, um, adj., *agreeable, pleasant, delightful.*
magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate.*
Massilia, ae, f., *Marseille.*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *accomplish.*
silentium, iī, n., *silence.*
tamen, *nevertheless, yet.*

EXERCISES

467. 1. Dum Rōmānī haec perficiunt, Gallī adortī sunt. 2. Quoad nōbīs anima erit, pugnābimus. 3. Itaque exspectāvimus dum nūntiī ā Caesare pervenīrent. 4. Dum lēgātum exspectāmus, castra commūniimus 5. In oppidō silentium erat, dōnec mīlitēs ex castrīs pervēnērunt. 6. Magistrātus ibi remānsit, dum exercitum vīdit. 7. Dux Massiliae exspectāvit dum navēs convenīrent. 8. Silentium agāmus, donec omnia cognōscāmus.

468. 1. They will not go away, until they see the general. 2. 2. While they were keeping silence, we were strongly fortifying the camp. 3. As long as there were two factions in the state, there was not peace. 4. He waited two days until you should come. 5. As long as our adversaries did not attack, we kept quiet. 6. Nevertheless let us withdraw before the enemy arrives.

Lesson 80

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

469. A Substantive Clause is one which is used as a noun. As a noun it may be used in any case, although its use as either the subject or object of a verb is most common.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERB IN INDICATIVE

470. **Quod,** meaning *that* or *the fact that,* introduces the only common substantive clause with the verb in the indicative.

accidit perincommodē quod eum nūsquam vīdistī, *it happened very unfortunately that you did not see him anywhere.*

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERB IN SUBJUNCTIVE

471. Clauses with the subjunctive are used as objects of verbs meaning *to command, induce, advise, ask, allow, decide, strive, accomplish,* etc. The connective is **ut** or **nē.**

petō quaesōque ut tuōs mēcum servēs, *I ask and beg that you save your friends together with me.*

472. Verbs of *hindering* are followed by the subjunctive in a substantive clause introduced by **nē, quīn,** or **quōminus.**

prohibuit quōminus in unum coīrēmus, *he kept us from coming together.*

impedior nē plūra dīcam, *I am prevented from saying more.*

473. Expressions of *doubting* or *ignorance* with a negative expressed or implied take a substantive clause with the subjunctive introduced by **quīn.** The most common expressions of this kind are, **nōn dubitō, nōn dubium est, quis dubitat, quis ignōrat,** etc.

quis ignōrat quīn tria Graecōrum genera sint? *who does not know that there are three kinds of Greeks?*

nōn dubitat quīn brevī sit Trōia peritūra, *he does not doubt that Troy is soon to fall.*

474. VOCABULARY

coeō, īre, īvī, ītum, *come together.*
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *grant.*
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, *decree, decide.*
magnificentia, ae, f., *grandeur, splendor, greatness.*
obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātus, *obey.*

permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *permit.*
praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *enjoin.*
quīn, *but that.*
quōminus, *from* (only with verbs of *hindering*).
reiciō, ere, reiēcī, reiectus, *hurl back.*
schola, ae, f., *school.*
sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *seek, follow.*
transportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *transport.*

EXERCISES

475. 1. Quod mīlitēs mandatīs nōn obtemperāvērunt, mihi nōn placet. 2. Postulō ut haec omnia fīant. 3. Dux mīlitibus praecēpit nē ullum omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. 4. Nōn dubitō quīn puerī ā scholā iam redierint. 5. Dēcrētum est ut exercitus flūmen trānsportārētur. 6. Omnēs prohibuit nē excēderent. 7. Hostēs prohibuit quōminus in ūnum coīrent. 8. Nūntiō praecēpit ut Rōmam statim contenderet. 9. Nōbīs persuāsit ut Rōmae sex diēs manērēmus. 10. Nōn dubitō quīn fuerit maximā virtūte.

476. 1. The general commanded the soldiers to take the town. 2. They did not doubt but that the Romans had already withdrawn. 3. You permitted the enemy to ravage the towns and fields. 4. The senate decreed that the war should be carried on. 5. The fleet of the enemy prevented us from transporting the grain. 6. I do not doubt but that the cavalry followed the enemy.

Lesson 81

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE, Continued

477. Verbs meaning to wish and to desire are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē**. The most common verbs of this kind are **optō, volō,** and **mālō.**

optō ut beātus sīs, *I want you to be happy.*

478. Verbs meaning to fear (**timeō, metuō, vereor**) are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **ut.** Note carefully that after verbs of *fearing* **nē** means *that, lest;* and **ut** means *that not.*

timeō nē hōc faciat, *I fear lest he does this* (or *will do this*).
timeō ut hoc faciat, *I fear that he will not do this.*

479. Verbs meaning *to bring about, to accomplish,* take the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut non.** These are substantive clauses of result.

haec rēs commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat, *this thing brought it about that provisions could be carried.*

Clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut non** are often used as the subject of impersonal verbs.

accidit ut omnēs Hermae dēicerentur, *it happened that all the Hermae were thrown down.*

vērum nōn est; sequitur ut falsum sit, *it is not true; it follows that it is false.*

480. VOCABULARY

clādēs, is, f., *destruction, defeat.*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead forth.*
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lūdibrium, ī, n., *mockery, sport;* **habeō in ludibriō,** *deride, mock*
optō, āre, āvī, ātus, *desire.*
plebs, is, f., *common people.*
praetereā, *besides.*
prīmō, *first, firstly.*
rescindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *tear down.*
sīc, *so, in this way.*
tergum, ī, n., *back.*
vertō, ere, vertī, versus, *turn;* **terga vertere,** *flee.*
vinculum, ī, n., *bond, fetter.*

EXERCISES

481. 1. Optō ut lēgātiō quam prīmum redeat. 2. Praetereā veritus sum nē Gallī nōs in ludibriō habērent. 3. Gravitās perīculī fecit ut celeriter terga verterēmus. 4. Sīc eōdem diē accidit ut dux Rōmānus suōs ēdūceret. 5. Plēbs optāvit nē tribūnis vincula essent. 6. Prīmō timuī nē aedificium rescidissent. 7. Sīc effēcit ut populus clādem nōn cognōsceret. 8. Maximē optāmus nē magistrātūs ūllās contrōversiās habeant. 9. Accidit ut eō diē in urbe nōn remanēret. 10. Vereor ut sociī nostrī impetum hostium sustineant.

482. 1. I desire that all return home. 2. It happened that resources were lacking. 3. They brought it about that the general was informed of everything. 4. I greatly fear that the allies will flee. 5. He feared that our men would not endure the attack of the enemy. 6. Thus it happened that the embassy returned to Rome within a few days. 7. They fear lest the enemy will this night cross the river.

Lesson 82

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

483. Indirect Questions take the Subjunctive, and depend on verbs of *asking, inquiring,* and the like.

Indirect questions may be introduced by,

(a) Interrogative Pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

rogō tē ubi fuerīs et quid fēcerīs, *I ask you where you were and what you did.*

(b) The Particles **-ne, num,** without distinction of meaning. The Particle **nōnne** is used only after **quaerō.**

Pūblilius itūrusne sit et quandō ex Alediō scīre poteris, *whether Publilius intends to go and when, you can learn from Aledius.*

quaerō ā tē nōnne oppressam rem pūblicam putēs, *I ask you whether you do not think the state is burdened.*

Note how the introductory particles of indirect questions differ from those of direct questions.

484. VOCABULARY

cōnsequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *pursue, overtake.*

dē tertiā vigiliā, *at about the third watch* (a watch was equal to a fourth of the night).

dēnique, adv., *finally, at last.*

explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*

in animō habeō, mihi est in animō, *I have in mind, intend.*

inter sē dare, *to exchange, give each other.*

praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send ahead, dispatch.*

spatium, ī, n., *space, time, opportunity.*

EXERCISES

485. 1. Gallīs erat in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. 2. Cūr cohortēs ex castrīs ēdūcere vultis? 3. Caesar ab explōrātōribus rogāvit ubi essent hostēs. 4. Dux ab hostibus quaesīvit nōnne in animō habērent obsīdēs inter sē dare. 5. Ab captīvīs quaesīvit quantae cīvitātēs in armīs essent. 6. Rogāvimus num esset spatium. 7. Dēnique vīdimus quid hostēs facerent. 8. Lēgātī Gallōrum nōbīs dixērunt quae sibi in animō essent. 9. Germāni ā duce Rōmānō rogāvērunt cūr in suōs fīnēs prōcessisset. 10. Germānī ā duce Rōmānō rogāvērunt: "Cūr in nostrōs fīnēs prōcessisti?"

486. 1. He asked whether the scouts returned to camp at about the third watch. 2. Caesar asked the envoys what they wished. 3. Do you know whether anyone is going to Rome? 4. When was the battle fought? 5. He asked when the battle was fought. 6. We soon found where the enemy was. 7. The Gauls dispatched envoys who should exchange hostages. 8. Let us ask the messenger what towns the enemy has captured.

Lesson 83

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

487. A Conditional Sentence has two parts, the Protasis or condition, and the Apodosis or conclusion. The Protasis or condition is regularly introduced by **sī,** *if;* **nisi,** *unless;* or **sīn,** *but if.*

There are three kinds of conditions, used as follows:

488. SIMPLE CONDITIONS

Simple Conditions merely state a case, and imply nothing as to its reality or fulfilment. They may be in present, past, or future time, and have in each case the proper tense of the indicative.

sī hōc facis, bene est, *if you do this, it is well.*

sī hōc facies, bene erit, *if you do this* (lit., *if you will do this*) *it will be well.* (Sometimes called *future more vivid.*)

sī hōc fēcistī, bene fuit, *if you did this, it was well.*

489. CONDITIONS OF POSSIBILITY

The Condition of Possibility states a case as being possible in some future time. The verbs in both parts of the sentence are in the subjunctive and are usually translated with the auxiliaries should and would respectively.

sī deus tē interroget, quid respondeās? *if a god should ask you, what would you answer?*

sī hōc faciās, bene sit, *if you should do this, it would be well.*

490. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT

Conditions Contrary to Fact state situations which do not exist. The subjunctive is used in both clauses, the imperfect for a contrary to fact condition in present time, the pluperfect for a contrary to fact condition in past time.

sī hōc facerēs, bene esset, *if you did this, it would be well.*

sī amīcus meus adesset, gaudērem, *if my friend were present, I would rejoice.*

sī hōc fecisses, bene fuisset, *if you had done this, it would have been well.*

nisi tū amīsissēs, numquam recēpissem, *unless you had lost it, I would never have found it.*

491. VOCABULARY

adventus, ūs, m., *approach, arrival.*
aeternus, a, um, *everlasting, eternal.*
apud, prep. with acc., *among, with.*
autem, conj. (never first in a sentence), *but, however.*
honor, ōris, m., *honor.*
immortālis, e, *immortal.*
incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*
inde, adv., *thence, thereupon.*
mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *assign.*
nisi, *unless.*
opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, *overwhelm.*
pateō, ēre, patuī, *lie open.*
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *provide, take care.*
valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *avail, prevail.*
vīs (vis), f., *violence;* pl., **vīrēs, ium,** *strength.*

EXERCISES

492. 1. Sī post mortem est vīta aeterna, mors nōn est timenda. 2. Sī equitēs statim cōnsequentur, magnum hostium numerum occīdent. 3. Sī amīcī nostrī Rōmae sunt, laetī sumus. 4. Helvētiī flūmen Rhodanum trānsiissent, nisi dux Rōmānus in Galliam contendisset. 5. Rēs pūblica oppressa esset, nisi cōnsul valuisset. 6. Sī via patēret, Gallī in prōvinciam iter facerent. 7. Sī hostibus vīrēs sint, oppugnent. 8. Sī haec mihi mandārēs, laetus essem. 9. Si autem ē castrīs discesseris, ab hostibus interficiēris. 10. Plūrēs Gallōrum occīsī essent, sī nostrī celerius cōnsecūtī essent.

493. 1. If you should go to Athens, you would see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we return to Rome, we will be happy. 3. If the soul is immortal, death is not to be feared. 4. If my authority had not been uncertain, I would have received more honor. 5. If a general commands, the soldier obeys. 6. If the soldiers are brave, there is always hope of victory. 7. If the leader fortifies the town well, no one will be afraid. 8. If he were brave, he would talk less.

Lesson 84

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Orātiō Oblīqua)

494. The words or thoughts of a person may be given directly (direct discourse), just as he spoke or thought, or they may be given indirectly (indirect discourse), in the words of some one else.

495. When given indirectly, the words or thoughts of a person depend or are the object of some verb of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving,* etc.

Thus we have Direct Discourse in, *Caesar said, "The die is cast";* but Indirect Discourse in, *Caesar said that the die was cast.*

496. In Latin, declarative sentences in Indirect Discourse change their main clause to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and all subordinate clauses take the subjunctive.

DIRECT DISCOURSE

sī iterum experīrī volunt, parātus sum dēcertāre, *if they wish to try again, I am ready to fight it out.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Ariovistus respondit, sī iterum experīrī vellent, sē parātum esse dēcertāre, *Ariovistus replied that if they wished to try again, he was ready to fight it out.*

TENSES OF INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

497. Tenses of the infinitive in indirect discourse denote time not by themselves but with reference to the verb on which they depend.

(a) The present infinitive denotes the same time as that of the verb on which it depends.

dīcit sē labōrāre, *he says that he is working.*
dīxit sē labōrāre, *he said that he was working.*

(b) The perfect infinitive denotes time previous to that of the verb on which it depends.

dīcit sē labōrāvisse, *he says that he has worked.*
dīxit sē labōrāvisse, *he said that he had worked.*

(c) The future infinitive denotes time after that of the verb on which it depends.

dīcit sē labōrātūrum esse, *he says that he will work.*
dīxit sē labōrātūrum esse, *he said that he would work.*

TENSES OF SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

498. The tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse follow the regular principles of Sequence of Tenses.

dīcunt sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī adfuerint, *they say that they see the ambassadors who were present.*

dīxērunt sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī adfuissent, *they said that they saw the ambassadors who had been present.*

499. VOCABULARY

adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *arrive.*
arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *consider.*
audiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *hear.*
Dīviciācus, ī, m., *Diviciacus,* a powerful Haeduan.
ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *reveal, disclose.*
incolō, ere, uī, cultus, *inhabit.*
īnferior, ius, *inferior.*
īnfīrmus, a, um, *weak.*
modo, *just, just now.*
neque (nec), *nor.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *rout, defeat.*
renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bring back word, report.*

EXERCISES

500. 1. Dīcunt Dumnorīgem esse summā audāciā. 2. Dīcit sē scīre illa esse vēra. 3. Exīstimāsne hās legiōnēs, quae modo advēnerint, īnfīrmās esse? 4. Renūntiāvērunt maximās nātiōnēs ā Caesare pulsās esse. 5. Dīxit mīlitēs quōs sēcum habuisset fortissimōs fuisse. 6. Caesar dīcit suōs flūmen, quod altissimum sit, trānsīre nōn posse. 7. Num putāvistis eōs quī fortēs essent discessūrōs esse? 8. Arbitror nūntium, quī ā Caesare missus sit, ab hostibus tenērī. 9. Nēmō putāvit eōs, quī hōc oppidum incoluissent, discessisse. 10. Dīviciācus Caesarī dīxit sē velle dē hīs rēbus cum eō agere.

501. 1. He says that this is the river which the Gauls crossed. 2. I think that our men are holding inferior positions. 3. He announced that the enemy had been routed. 4. I hear that the town which the Gauls inhabit is being fortified. 5. He says that the man whom we see is his friend. 6. He said that the man whom we saw was his friend. 7. It was reported that the general would fortify the hill which he had seized.

Lesson 85

THE INFINITIVE

502. The infinitive is used as the subject of **est** and various impersonal verbs. When so used, the infinitive may have a subject accusative and may take a predicate noun or adjective.

longum est ea dīcere, *the telling of these things is a long story.*

eōs hōc nōmine appellārī fās est, *it is right that they be called by this name.*

503. The infinitive without the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs, to complete their meaning. These are known as Complementary Infinitives. The most common verbs which take this infinitive are **volō, mālō, nōlō; debeō,** *ought;* **audeō,** *dare;* and **statuō,** *decide.*

bellum cum Germānīs gerere constituit, *he decided to wage war with the Germans.*

504. The infinitive with the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs;

(a) Verbs meaning to *say, think, know, perceive.* This is the regular construction of principal clauses in indirect discourse. See previous lesson.

(b) Verbs meaning to *order, compel, forbid, permit,* or *teach.* The verbs **iubeō,** *I order,* and **vetō,** *I forbid,* are very common.

tertiam aciem castra mūnīre iussit, *he ordered the men of the third line to fortify the camp.*

505. VOCABULARY

comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *get ready.*
cōnstat, stāre, stitit, *it is evident.*
cōnsuēsco, ere, suēvī, suētum, *become accustomed.*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *distribute.*
iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, *order.*
nancīscor, ī, nactus sum, *procure.*
necesse est, *it is necessary.*
opus est, *it is necessary.*
praestat, *it is better.*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *decide.*
studeō, ēre, uī, ———, *be eager for* (with dative); **novīs rēbus studēre,** *to be eager for a revolution.*

EXERCISES

506. 1. Laudārī est gratum. 2. Incolās ē oppidō exīre iussit. 3. Opus est copiam frūmentī ad castra mittī. 4. Caesar lēgātum auxilium mittere iussit. 5. Cōnstat magnum numerum barbarōrum ad oppidum vēnisse. 6. Dux plūrēs mīlitēs nancīscī statuit. 7. Gallī agrōs vāstāre consuēvērunt. 8. Cōnsul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubēbit. 9. Necesse est impedīmenta comparāre. 10. Illī mīlitēs ex hībernīs ēgredī nōn ausī sunt. 11. Cōnsulēs praesidia disponere statuērunt. 12. Officium est mīlitum prō patriā fortiter pugnāre et morī.

507. 1. I decided to get the troops ready. 2. To be brave in battle is the duty of every one. 3. It is better to procure more aid. 4. He ordered us to summon the messengers. 5. It is necessary to fortify the camp with a wall. 6. It is evident that many soldiers arrived in the night. 7. It was easy to capture the town. 8. The general had decided to storm the town on the march.

Lesson 86

PARTICIPLES

508. Participles are verbal adjectives. As adjectives, they modify nouns and agree with them in gender, number, and case. As verbs, they have voice and tense, and govern cases.

TENSE OF PARTICIPLES

509. A participle denotes time with reference to that of the verb in its own clause.

The present participle denotes an action as going on at the time of the action of the verb.

pugnāns occīditur, *he is killed while fighting.*
audiēbam tē loquentem, *I heard you speaking.*

The perfect participle shows an action already completed at the time of the action of the verb.

audītus, sedeō, *having been heard, I sit down.*
audītus sēdī, *having been heard, I sat down.*
audītus sedēbō, *having been heard, I will sit down.*

USE OF PARTICIPLES

Participles are often equivalent to an English subordinate clause, expressing a variety of relations, such as time, cause, means, manner, condition, etc.

longius prōsequī veritus, ad Cicerōnem pervēnit, *because he feared to follow further, he came to Cicero.* (Cause.)

flentēs implōrābant, *they begged with tears.* (Manner).

mente ūtī nōn possumus, cibō et pōtiōne complētī, *if filled with food and drink, we cannot use our mind.* (Condition.)

The perfect participle often expresses an idea which in English would be put in a coordinate clause.

multōs vīcōs captōs incendit, *he captured and burned many villages* (lit., *he burned many villages captured*).

510. VOCABULARY

cernō, ere, ———, ———, *perceive.*
circum, prep. with acc., *around.*
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *see.*
dīligentia, ae, f., *diligence, carefulness, industry.*
experior, īrī, pertus sum, *try, test.*
interimō, ere, ēmī, emptus, *destroy, kill.*
latus, eris, n., *side, flank.*
mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*
oculus, ī, m., *eye.*
permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *influence, arouse.*
persequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow up.*
submittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send, despatch.*
tueor, ērī, ———, ———, *guard, watch.*

EXERCISES

511. 1. Vidēbam eum id agentem. 2. Mīlitēs missōs nōn culpāvit. 3. Caesar cōnsul factus in Galliam contendit. 4. Gallī hīs rēbus permōtī obsidēs mīsērunt. 5. Multōs hostium captōs interēmit. 6. Nostrī hostēs circum mūrum prōgredientēs cernunt. 7. Dīligentiam vestram saepe expertus, vōs nunc ad turrim vocō. 8. Hostēs latera adorientēs vīdimus. 9. Dux hostēs pulsōs persequetur. 10. Sociīs, quōs implōrantēs cōnspexit, subsidium submīsit.

512. 1. (Since) the captive (had been) condemned (he) was killed. 2. (Though) wounded, he fought for a long time. 3. Our men were killed (while) fighting bravely. 4. When he had been informed of this, he hastened to Rome. 5. The general captured (participle) the town and fortified it. 6. The leaders of the Gauls (who were) captured will be sent to Rome.

Lesson 87

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

513. The Gerund is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs cases, and as a noun it itself may be used in the constructions of the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. In form, it is the neuter singular of the future passive participle.

ars vīvendī, *the art of living.*
studiosus tē audiendī, *desirous of hearing you.*
mēns discendō alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning.*

514. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective. As a verb it governs cases, and as an adjective it agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies. In form, it is the singular and plural of all genders of the future passive participle.

inita sunt cōnsilia urbis dēlendae, *plans have been formed for destroying the city.*
diēs rogātiōnī ferendae, *the day for proposing the measure.*

515. Either the gerund or gerundive construction may usually be used to express the same idea.

cupidus poetam audiendī, *desirous of hearing the poet* (Gerund).
cupidus poetae audiendī, *desirous of hearing the poet* (Gerundive).
dēlector ōrātōrēs legendō, *I am delighted with reading the orators* (Gerund).

dēlector ōrātōribus legendīs, *I am delighted with reading the orators* (Gerundive).

THE SUPINE

516. The Supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose, and it may take any construction that the verb from which it is derived may.

lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, *they send envoys to ask for help.*
nōn Grāīs servītum mātribus ībō, *I shall not go to be a slave to the Greek matrons.*

517. The Supine in **-ū** is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. It never takes a dependent case.

terribilēs vīsū formae, *figures terrible to see.*
mīrābile dictū, *wonderful to tell.*

518. VOCABULARY

ad multam noctem, *till late at night.*
administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *perform.*
aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable.*
causā, abl., *for the sake of;* always preceded by the genitive.
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage, exhort.*
cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, *follow up.*
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *point out, show, mention.*
effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *escape.*
explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *examine.*
praedō, ōnis, m., *robber.*
sīgna īnferō, *charge* (literally, *bear the standards against*).
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*
versor, ārī, ātus sum, *be engaged in.*

EXERCISES

519. 1. Lēgātus fīnem loquendī fēcit. 2. Lēgātī ad pācem petendam vēnērunt. 3. Gallī dē bellō Rōmānīs īnferendō cōnsilia faciēbant. 4. Tempus hostibus ad signa īnferenda aliēnum fuit. 5. In castrīs mūniendīs versābātur. 6. Effugiendī causā omnia faciēbat. 7. Prīncipēs Gallōrum ad Caesarem vēnērunt auxilium petītum. 8. Haec rēs est difficilis dēmōnstrātū. 9. Ad multam noctem in hīs rēbus administrandīs versābātur. 10. Quaerunt quid optimum factū sit. 11. Dē hostibus cōnsectandīs colloquāmur.

520. 1. This is easier to say than to do. 2. The ambassadors were sent to Rome to seek peace. 3. For many days he was engaged in following up the enemy. 4. For the sake of examining the enemy's position he sent out very many scouts. 5. This place was unfavorable for fighting. 6. Many kings are desirous of carrying on wars.

REVIEW

521. 1. In castrīs silentium erat, donec Caesar Rōmā pervēnit. 2. Cōnsulēs exspectāvērunt dum nāvēs convenīrent. 3. Postulāvit ut mīlitēs mandātīs suīs obtemperārent. 4. Hostēs prohibuērunt nē Rōmam statim contenderēmus. 5. Cōnsulēs effēcērunt ut socii clādem nōn cognōscerent. 6. Veritus sum nē omnia āmitterēmus. 7. Nōs rogāvit quid fēcissēmus. 8. Sī ā castellō discessissēs, ab hostibus interfectus essēs. 9. Caesar arbitrābātur hās cīvitātēs sibi amīcās futūrās esse. 10. Bellī inferendī causā in prōvinciam trānsiit.

PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

2. A noun used with and explaining another noun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an appositive, and is said to be in apposition.

3. An appositive agrees with its noun or pronoun in case, and, if possible, in number and gender.

4. A noun connected with the subject by some form of the verb **sum** or other intransitive verb is called a predicate noun.

5. A predicate noun agrees in case and, whenever possible, in number and gender, with the noun which it modifies.

6. The vocative case is the case of address, and is the same as the nominative except in the second declension, when it usually ends in **-e.**

7. The genitive of possession is used to denote ownership.

8. The subjective genitive denotes the person who does the act indicated by the noun on which it depends.

9. The objective genitive denotes the object of an action implied in a noun or an adjective.

10. The genitive of the whole denotes the whole from which a part is taken.

11. The appositional genitive is used to define a word of general meaning.

12. The genitive of quality is used with a noun to denote a quality of that noun.

13. The genitive of specification is used with a few nouns and many adjectives to denote that with reference to which a quality exists.

14. Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* take a genitive of the charge.

15. With **interest** the person or thing concerned is denoted by the genitive. If, however, the person concerned is expressed in English by a pronoun, the Latin uses the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective.

16. The genitive is sometimes used with verbs and adjectives, meaning *plenty* or *want.*

17. **Meminī** and **reminīscor,** when they mean to *be mindful of;* **meminī,** meaning to *mention*, and **oblīvīscor,** meaning to *be unmindful of*, take the genitive.

18. **Meminī** and **reminīscor,** meaning literally to *remember*, to *retain in mind*, and **oblīvīscor,** meaning literally to *forget*, take the accusative.

19. The impersonal verbs **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet,** and

taedet take the accusative of the person affected, and the genitive of the cause of the feeling.

20. Transitive verbs take the accusative of the direct object, and the dative of the indirect object.

21. Many intransitive verbs take the dative especially those signifying *favor*, *help*, *injure*, *please*, *displease*, *trust*, *distrust*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like.

22. The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub,** and **super.**

23. The dative of reference is used to denote the person to whom a statement refers or of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest.

24. The dative is used with forms of **sum** to denote the possessor.

25. The dative is used with the gerundive to express the agent.

26. The dative is often used to express the purpose or tendency of an action. This is often used with another dative (Reference), denoting the person concerned.

27. The dative is used with adjectives denoting *friendliness*, *hostility*, *likeness*, *unlikeness*, *equality*, *nearness*, *relation*, *fitness*, etc.

28. The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

29. The accusative is used in exclamations.

30. Verbs meaning to *make*, *choose*, *call*, *show*, etc., may take two accusatives, one of the direct object, the other of the predicate accusative.

31. A predicate accusative may be an adjective as well as a noun.

32. Some verbs meaning to *ask*, *demand*, *teach*, *conceal*, etc., take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

33. Verbs compounded with **circum** or **trans** may take two accusatives, one depending on the verb, the other on the preposition.

34. The limit of motion is expressed by the accusative with a preposition.

35. With names of towns, small islands, **domus,** and **rūs** the preposition is regularly omitted.

36. Extent of time or space is regularly expressed by the accusative.

37. Verbs or adjectives denoting separation take the ablative with or without a preposition. The preposition is usually omitted with words of *freeing*, *depriving*, and *lacking*.

38. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab.**

39. The comparative adjectives are regularly followed by **quam** and a substantive in the same case.

40. The ablative is used to denote cause. The ablative of cause is sometimes used with a preposition, **ab, dē,** or **ex.**

41. Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum.**

42. The ablative is used to denote the manner in which an act is performed. If the noun is unaccompanied by an adjective, the preposition **cum** is also used.

43. The ablative of a noun modified by an adjective is used to denote a quality. This construction may be used attributively or predicatively.

44. The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument by which an act is done.

45. The ablative of means is used with **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor.**

46. The expressions **opus est** and **ūsus est** take the ablative.

47. Verbs meaning to *fill* and adjectives meaning *full* take the ablative.

48. Two words in the ablative, usually a noun or pronoun and a participle, are often used in a loose connection with a sentence to express any one of a number of ideas, such as *time*, *cause*, *manner*, *condition*, *concession*, etc.

49. The ablative is used with verbs of *buying* and *selling* to denote the price.

50. The ablative is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to show the degree of difference.

51. The ablative of specification is used to denote that in respect to which something is or is not true.

52. The ablative of specification is used with **dignus** and **indignus.**

53. The place where a thing is or is done is usually expressed by the ablative with **in.**

54. Names of towns, however, except singulars of the first and second declensions take the ablative without a preposition.

55. Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ab, dē,** or **ex.**

56. Names of towns, however, **domus** and **rūs,** use the ablative without a preposition.

57. The time when or within which anything takes place is expressed by the ablative.

58. The locative case denotes place where. It occurs regularly in the singular names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, and also in a few special words, like **domī, humī, bellī, mīlitiae,** and **rūrī.**

59. The subjunctive is used to express an exhortation. The negative is **nē.**

60. The subjunctive is used in questions of a purely rhetorical nature, implying the impossibility of the thing mentioned and expecting no answer. The negative is **nōn.**

61. The optative subjunctive is used to express a wish. The negative is **nē.**

62. The potential subjunctive is used to express ideas set forth by English *may, should,* or *would.* The negative is **nōn.**

63. Affirmative commands or requests are expressed by the imperative.

64. Negative commands or prohibition may be expressed by **nōlī,** or **nōlīte** with the infinitive, by **cavē** or **cavēte** (**nē**) with the present subjunctive, or by the perfect subjunctive with **nē.**

65. According to the rules of tense sequence, the principal tenses of the indicative are followed by the principal tenses of the subjunctive; the historical by the historical.

66. Purpose is usually expressed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **ut** if affirmative, by **nē** if negative.

67. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to express purpose.

68. When a purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, it is always introduced by **quō.**

69. When the antecedent of a relative pronoun is indefinite, and the clause expresses some quality or characteristic of it, the subjunctive is used.

70. Causal clauses take the indicative if the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker himself; the subjunctive if given on the authority of some one else.

71. **Cum** meaning *since* takes the subjunctive.

72. Result is regularly expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut.** The negative is **nōn.**

73. Clauses introduced by **quamquam** take the indicative.

74. **Cum** meaning *when* takes the indicative if the clause refers to present or future time.

75. When **cum,** meaning *when,* refers to past time, the indicative is used when the time is merely defined; but the subjunctive is used when some circumstance connected with it is stated.

76. **Postquam,** *after;* **ubi, ut,** *when;* and **simul ac** (**simul atque**), **cum primum,** *as soon as,* referring to a past occurrence, take the indicative, usually the perfect.

77. **Dum, dōnec, quoad,** and **quamdiū,** meaning *as long as, while* take the indicative; usually the same tense as that of the main verb.

78. **Dum,** meaning *as long as, while,* usually takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the main verb.

79. **Dum, dōnec,** and **quoad,** meaning *until,* take the subjunctive when referring to time after that of the main verb, but the indicative when referring to time before that of the main verb.

80. **Quod,** meaning *that* or *the fact that,* introduces the only common substantive clause with the verb in the indicative.

81. Clauses with the subjunctive are used as objects of verbs meaning to *command, induce, advise, ask, allow, decide, strive, accomplish,* etc. The connective is **ut** or **nē.**

82. Verbs of hindering are followed by the subjunctive in a substantive clause introduced by **nē, quīn,** or **quōminus.**

83. Expressions of doubting or ignorance with a negative expressed or implied take a substantive clause with the subjunctive introduced by **quīn.**

84. Verbs meaning to *wish* and to *desire* are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē.**

85. Verbs meaning to *fear* are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **ut.** Remember that after verbs of fearing **nē** means *that, lest;* and **ut** means *that not.*

86. Verbs meaning to *bring about,* to *accomplish* take the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn.**

87. Clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn** are often used as the subject of impersonal verbs.

88. Indirect questions take the subjunctive, and depend on verbs of *asking, inquiring,* and the like.

89. A conditional sentence has two parts, the protasis or condition, and the apodosis or conclusion. The protasis or condition is regularly introduced by **sī,** *if;* **nisi,** *unless;* or **sīn,** *but if.*

90. Simple conditions merely state a case, and imply nothing as to its reality or fulfilment. They may be in present, past, or future time, and have in each case the proper tense of the indicative.

91. The condition of possibility states a case as being possible in some future time. The verbs in both parts of the sentence are in the subjunctive and are usually translated with the auxiliaries *should* and *would* respectively.

92. Conditions contrary to fact state situations which do not exist. The subjunctive is used in both clauses, the imperfect for a contrary to fact condition in present time, the pluperfect for a contrary to fact condition in past time.

93. Declarative sentences on being put into indirect discourse change

their main clause to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and all subordinate clauses take the subjunctive.

94. Tenses of the infinitive in indirect discourse denote time not by themselves, but with reference to the verb on which they depend.

95. The infinitive is used as the subject of **est** and various impersonal verbs. When so used, the infinitive may have a subject accusative and may take a predicate noun or adjective.

96. The infinitive without the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs, to complete their meaning. These are known as complementary infinitives.

97. The infinitive with the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs.

98. A participle denotes time with reference to that of the verb in its own clause.

99. The gerund is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs cases, and as a noun it itself may be used in the various constructions of each case.

100. The gerund is a verbal adjective. As a verb it governs cases, and as an adjective it agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies.

101. The supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.

102. The supine in **-ū** is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification.

PART III
LATIN FOR TRANSLATION

Latin Prayers

THE SIGN OF THE CROSS

1. In nōmine Patris, et Fīliī, et Spīritūs Sanctī. Amen.

THE LORD'S PRAYER

2. (See Introduction).

THE ANGELICAL SALUTATION

3. Avē Marīa, grātiā plēna; Dominus tēcum; benedicta tū in mulieribus, et benedictus fructus ventris tuī, Iēsus. Sancta Marīa, Māter Deī, ōrā prō nōbīs peccātōribus, nunc et in hōrā mortis nostrae. Amen.

THE APOSTLES' CREED

4. Crēdō in Deum, Patrem omnipotentem, Creātōrem caelī et terrae. Et in Iēsum Christum, Fīlium eius ūnicum, Dominum nostrum; quī conceptus est dē Spīritū Sanctō, nātus ex Marīā Virgine, passus sub Pontiō Pīlātō, crucifixus, mortuus, et sepultus; dēscendit ad inferōs; tertiā diē resurrēxit ā mortuīs; ascendit ad caelōs, sedet ad dextram Deī Patris omnipotentis; inde ventūrus est iūdicāre vīvōs et mortuōs. Crēdō in Spīritum Sanctum, sanctam Ecclēsiam Catholicam, Sanctōrum commūniōnem, remissiōnem peccātōrum, carnis resurrectiōnem, vītam aeternam. Amen.

GLORIA PATRI

5. Glōria Patrī, et Fīliō, et Spīrituī Sanctō. Sīcut erat in principiō, et nunc, et semper, et in saecula saeculōrum. Amen.

THE CONFITEOR

6. Confiteor Deō omnipotentī, beātae Marīae semper virginī, beātō Michaelī archangelō, beātō Ioannī Baptistae, sanctīs apostolīs Petrō et Paulō, et omnibus sanctīs, quia peccāvī nimis, cōgitātiōne, verbō, et opere, meā culpā, meā culpā, meā maximā culpā. Ideo precor beātam Marīam semper virginem, beātum Michaelem archangelum, beātum Ioannem Baptistam, sanctōs apostolōs Petrum et Paulum, et omnēs sanctōs, ōrāre prō mē ad Dominum Deum nostrum.

Misereātur meī omnipotens Deus, et dimissīs peccātīs meīs, perdūcat mē ad vītam aeternam. Amen.

Indulgentiam, absolūtiōnem, et remissiōnem peccātōrum meōrum, tribuat mihi omnipotens et misericors Dominus. Amen.

7. SALVE REGĪNA

Salvē, Regīna, Māter misericordiae;
Vīta, dulcēdo, et spēs nostra, salvē.
Ad tē clāmāmus, exulēs fīliī Hevae;
Ad tē suspīrāmus, gementēs et flentēs in hāc lacrymārum valle.
Eia ergō, Advocāta nostra,
Illōs tuōs misericordēs oculōs ad nōs converte;
Et Iēsum, benedictum fructum ventris tuī,
Nōbīs post hōc exilium ostende.
O clēmens, O pia, O dulcis Virgo Marīa.

V. Orā prō nōbīs, sancta Deī Genitrix,
R. Ut dignī efficiāmur prōmissiōnibus Christī.

MEMORĀRE

8. Memorāre, O piissima Virgo Marīa, nōn esse audītum ā saeculō, quemquam ad tua currentem praesidia, tua implōrantem auxilia, tua petentem suffrāgia, esse dērelictum. Ego, tālī animātus confīdentiā, ad tē, Virgo Virginum, Māter, currō; ad te veniō, cōram tē gemēns peccātor assistō. Nōlī, Māter Verbī, verba mea dēspicere, sed audī propitia et exaudī. Amen.

ORĒMUS

9. Grātiam tuam, quaesumus, Domine, mentibus nostrīs infunde; ut quī, angelō nuntiante, Christī fīliī tuī incarnātiōnem cognōvimus, per passiōnem eius et crucem ad resurrectiōnis glōriam perdūcāmur; per eundem Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen.

Latin Hymns

10. TANTUM ERGŌ

Tantum ergō Sacrāmentum
Venerēmur cernuī:
Et antīquum documentum
Novō cēdat rītuī:
Praestet fidēs supplēmentum
Sensuum dēfectuī.

Genitōrī, Genitōque
Laus et iubilātiō,
Salūs, honor, virtūs quōque
Sit et benedictiō:
Prōcēdentī ab utrōque
Compar sit laudātiō.

11. DĒ NATIVITĀTE DOMINĪ[1]

Puer nātus in Bethlehem,
Unde gaudet Ierusalem.

Hīc iacet in praesēpiō,
Quī regnat sine terminō.

Cognōvit bōs et asinus
Quod puer erat Dominus.

Rēgēs dē Sabā veniunt
Aurum, tūs, myrrham offerunt.

Intrantēs domum invīcem
Novum salūtant Principem.

Dē mātre nātus Virgine
Sine virīlī sēmine;

Sine serpentis vulnere
Dē nostrō vēnit sanguine;

In carne nōbīs similis,
Peccātō sed dissimilis;

Ut redderet nōs hominēs
Deō et sibi similēs.

In hōc nātālī gaudeō
Benedīcāmus Dominō.

Laudētur sancta Trīnitas,
Deō dīcāmus grātiās.

12. DĒ RESURRECTIŌNE DOMINI[2]

Pōne luctum, Magdalēna,
Et serēnā lacrimās;
Nōn est iam Simōnis coena,
Nōn cūr flētum exprimās·
Causae mille sunt laetandī,
Causae mille exultandī:
Alleluia resonet.

Sūme rīsum, Magdalēna,
Frons nitescat lūcida;
Dēmigrāvit omnis poena,
Lux coruscat fulgida;
Christus mundum līberāvit,
Et dē morte triumphāvit:
Alleluia resonet.

Tolle vultum, Magdalēna,
Redivīvum obstupe;
Vidē frons quam sit amoena,
Quinque plagās aspice;
Fulgent sīcut margarītae,
Ornāmenta novae vītae:
Alleluia resonet.

Gaude, plaude, Magdalēna,
Tumbā Christus exiit,
Tristis est peracta scēna,
Victor mortis rediit;
Quem dēflēbās morientem,
Nunc arrīdē resurgentem:
Alleluia resonet.

Vīve, vīve, Magdalēna,
Tua lux reversa est,
Gaudiīs turgescat vēna,
Mortis vīs abstersa est;
Moestī procul sunt dolōrēs,
Laetī redeant amōrēs:
Alleluia resonet.

---

[1] This poem was written by Henricus Pistor, a theologian who lived in Paris at the end of the fourteenth and the beginning of the fifteenth centuries.

[2] Written by Peter the Venerable, who in 1122 was elected Abbot of Clugny in Burgundy.

13. IN PASSIŌNE DOMINĪ[1]

Quam dēspectus, quam dēiectus,
Rēx caelōrum est effectus,
Ut salvāret saeculum;
Esurīvit et sitīvit,
Pauper et egēnus īvit
Usque ad patibulum.

Recordāre paupertātis,
Et extrēmae vīlitātis,
Et gravis suppliciī.
Sī es compos ratiōnis,
Estō memor passiōnis,
Fellis et absinthiī.

Cum dēductus est immensus,
Et in cruce tunc suspensus,
Fūgērunt discipulī.
Manūs, pedēs perfōdērunt,
Et acētō pōtāvērunt
Summum Rēgem saeculī;

Cūius oculī beātī
Sunt in crūce obscūrātī,
Et vultus expalluit:
Suō corporī tunc nūdō
Nōn remansit pulchritūdo,
Decor omnis aufūgit.

Quī haec audīs, ingemisce,
Et in istīs planctum misce,
Et cordis moestitiās:
Corpus ange, corde plange,
Mentem frange, manū tange
Christī mortis saevitas.

Virum rēspice dolōrum,
Et novissimum virōrum,
Fortem ad supplicia.
Tibi grātum sit et aequum
Iam in cruce morī sēcum,
Compatī convīcia.

Crucifixe, fac mē fortem,
Ut libenter tuam mortem
Plangam, dōnec vixerō.
Tēcum volō vulnerārī,
Te libenter amplexārī
In cruce dēsīderō.

14. DĒ CRUCE DOMINI

Crux avē benedicta!
Per tē mors est dēvicta,
In tē pependit Deus,
Rēx et Salvātor meus.
Tū arborum rēgīna,
Salūtis medicīna,
Pressōrum est levāmen,
Et tristium sōlāmen.

Ō sacrōsanctum lignum!
Tū vītae nostrae signum,
Tulistī fructum Iēsum
Hūmānī cordis ēsum
Dum crucis inimīcōs,
Vocābis, et amīcōs,
O Iēsu, Fīlī Deī,
Sīs, ōrō, memor meī.

---

[1] Written by St. Bonaventure, a member of the Franciscan Order and a famous theologian of the thirteenth century.

15. DĒ NOVISSIMŌ IUDICIO[1]

Diēs īrae, diēs illa
Solvet saeclum in favillā,
Teste David cum Sibyllā.

Quantus tremor est futūrus,
Quandō Iūdex est ventūrus,
Cuncta stricte discussūrus.

Tuba mīrum spārgēns sonum
Per sepulchra regiōnum
Cōget omnēs ante thronum.

Mors stupēbit et nātūra,
Quum resurget creātūra,
Iūdicantī rēsponsūra.

Liber scriptus prōferētur,
In quō tōtum continētur,
Dē quō mundus iūdicētur.

Iuste Iūdex ultiōnis,
Dōnum fac remissiōnis
Ante diem ratiōnis.

Ingemiscō tanquam reus,
Culpā rubet vultus meus:
Supplicantī parce, Deus.

Quī Marīam absolvistī,
Et latrōnem exaudistī,
Mihi quoque spem dedistī.

Iūdex ergō quum sedēbit,
Quidquid latet, apparēbit,
Nil inultum remanēbit.

Quid sum miser tum dictūrus,
Quem patrōnum rogatūrus,
Quum vix iustus sit sēcūrus?

Rex tremendae māiestātis,
Quī salvāndōs salvās grātīs,
Salvē mē, fons pietātis.

Recordāre, Iēsu pie,
Quod sum causa tuae viae:
Nē mē perdās illā diē!

Quaerēns mē sēdistī lassus,
Redēmistī crucem passus:
Tantus labor nōn sit cassus.

Precēs meae nōn sunt dignae,
Sed tū bonus fac benigne
Nē perennī cremer igne

Inter ovēs locum praestā,
Et ab haedīs mē sequestrā,
Statuēns in parte dextrā.

Confūtātīs maledictīs,
Flammīs acribus addictīs,
Vocā mē cum benedictīs.

Ōrō supplex et acclīnis
Cor contrītum quasi cinis:
Gere cūram meī fīnis.

---

[1] Written by Thomas of Celano, a scholar and friend of St. Francis of Assisi, and one of the earliest members of the order founded by him in 1208.

Selections from Nepos[1]

HANNIBAL

His greatness as a general, and his hatred of the Romans

16. Hannibal, Hamilcaris fīlius, Karthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnes gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est īnfitiandum[2] Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātorēs prūdentiā, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitūdine cūnctās nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēnscumque[3] cum eō[4] congressus est in Ītaliā, semper discessit superior. Quod[5] nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā debilitātus[6] esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse.[7] Sed multōrum obtrēctātiō[8] dēvīcit ūnīus virtūtem.

Hīc autem velut[9] hērēditāte relictum odium[10] paternum[11] erga[12] Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit, ut prius animam quam id[13] deposuerit; quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret,[14] numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

---

[1] Born in town of Ticinum (Pavia) in Northern Italy, about B. C. 100. Died about B. C. 24. An essayist rather than a historian.

[2] Īnfitior, ārī, ātus, sum, *deny.*

[3] quotiēnscumque, *as often as.*

[4] eō, i. e., populō Rōmānō.

[5] Quod nisi, *unless then.*

[6] dēbilitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *weaken.*

[7] *would have been able.*

[8] obtrēctātiō, ōnis, f., *jealousy.*

[9] velut hērēditāte, *by inheritance as it were.*

[10] odium, ī, n., *hatred, grudge.*

[11] paternus, a, um, *of a father,* here *his frther's.*

[12] ergā, *towards.*

[13] id, i. e., odium.

[14] indigēret, *needed.*

Hannibal's Vow

17. Nam ut[1] omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iīs temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit[2] bellandī, ut usque ā rubrō[3] marī arma cōnātus sit īnferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eius voluntāte explōrārent darentque[4] operam cōnsiliīs clandestīnīs[5] ut Hannibalem in suspīciōnem rēgī[6] addūcerent, tamquam[7] ab ipsīs corruptus alia[8] atque anteā sentīret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent, idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōnsiliīs sēgregārī[9] vīdisset, tempore[10] datō adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāsset, hoc adiūnxit. "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō[11] mē, utpote[12] nōn amplius novem annōs nato,[13] in Hispāniam imperātor proficīscēns Karthāgine, Iovī optimō maximō hostiās[14] immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs dum cōnficiēbātur, quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficīscī. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere[15] coepissem nē dubitāret ducere, tum ille, 'faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem, quam postulō, dederis.' Simul mē ad āram[16] addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre[17] instituerat, eamque cēterīs remōtīs tenentem iūrāre iussit, numquam mē in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūsiūrandum patrī datum usque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī, ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat, quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus. Quare si quid amīcē[18] dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis nōn imprūdenter fēceris sī mē[19] cēlāris; cum quidam bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis[20] sī nōn mē in eō prīncipem posueris."

---

[1] ut omittam, *to omit.*
[2] Hannibal is understood as subject.
[3] ruber, rubra, rubrum, *red.*
[4] darent operam, *try.*
[5] clandestīnus, -a, -um, *hidden, secret.*
[6] rēgī, *in the king's eyes.*
[7] tamquam, *as if.*
[8] alia atque anteā sentīret, *felt differently than before.*
[9] sēgregō, āre, āvī, ātus, *separate, exclude.*
[10] tempore, *chance.*
[11] puerulus, I, m., *little boy.*
[12] utpote, *namely, as being.*
[13] nātō, agrees with mē.
[14] hostia, ae, f., *victim.*
[15] petere nē dubitāret, *beg him not to hesitate.*
[16] āra, ae, f., *altar.*
[17] sacrificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *sacrifice.*
[18] amīcē, adv., from amīcus.
[19] mē, *from me.*
[20] frūstror, ārī, ātus sum, *deceive, trick.*

Hannibal's campaign in Spain, and his march over the Alps

18. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est; cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō,[1] equitātuī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperiī ad eum dētulit. Id[2] Karthāginem dēlātum pūblicē comprobātum[3] est. Sīc Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus imperātor factus proximō trienniō[4] omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit;[5] Saguntum foederātam[6] cīvitātem, vī expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Africam mīsit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Ītaliam sēcum dūxit. Saltum[7] Pyrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque[8] iter fēcit, cum omnibus incolīs cōnflīxit; nēminem nisi vīctum dīmīsit. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quae Ītaliam ab Galliā sēiungunt,[9] quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū[10] concīdit, loca patefēcit, itinera mūniit,[11] effēcit ut eā[12] elephantus ōrnatus[13] īre posset, quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere.[14] Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

---

[1] sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *appoint instead.*
[2] Id, i. e., his appointment.
[3] comprobō, āre, āvī, ātus, *approve.*
[4] triennium, ī, n., *a period of three years.*
[5] subēgit, *subdued.*
[6] foederatūs, a, um, *allied.*
[7] Saltum, *mountain range.*
[8] quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever.*
[9] sēiungō, ere, iūnī, iūnctus, *separate.*
[10] trānsitus, ūs, m., *passage.*
[11] mūniit, *built.*
[12] eā . . quā, *there . . . where.*
[13] ōrnātus, *with its load.*
[14] rēpō, ere, rēpsī, rēptum, *creep.*

The victories in Italy

19. Cōnflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidiī[1] apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dīmittit. Tertiō īdem Scīpiō cum collēgā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum iīs manum cōnseruit;[2] utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō gravī morbō adficitur oculōrum, ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamtum premerētur lectīcāque[3] ferrētur, C. Flamīnium cōnsulem apud Trasumennum cum exercitū īnsidiīs circumventum occīdit, neque multō post C. Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlectā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpuliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam[4] eī vēnērunt duo cōnsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utrīusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit Paulum cōnsulem occīdit et aliquot praetereā cōnsulārēs, in iīs Cn. Servīlium Geminum, quī superiore annō fuerat cōnsul.

---

[1] Clastidiī, locative case.
[2] cōnserō, ere, seruī, sertus, *join;* with manum, *join battle.*
[3] lectīca, ae, f., *couch, sedan.*
[4] obviam, *to meet.*

He outwits Fabius and defeats the Roman generals

20. Hāc pugnā pugnātā, Rōmam profectus est nūllō resistente. In propinquīs urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverterētur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō eī sē obiēcit. Hic clausus locōrum angustiīs, noctū sine ūllō dētrīmentō exercitus[1] se expedīvit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit[2] verba. Namque obductā[3] nocte sarmenta[4] in cornibus iuvencōrum[5] dēligāta incendit eiusque generis multitūdinem magnam dispālātam[6] immīsit. Quō repentīnō obiectō vīsū,[7] tantum terrōrem iniēcit[8] exercituī Rōmānōrum ut ēgredī extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multīs diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum[9] equitum parī ac[10] dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōnsulem, in[11] Lūcānīs absēns[12] in īnsidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēs[13] cōnsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quārē hoc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit: quamdiū in Ītaliā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēnsem pugnam in campō castra posuit.

---

[1] exercitūs, objective genitive after dētrīmentō.
[2] dedit verba, *deceived.*
[3] obductā nocte, *under the cover of night.*
[4] sarmenta, *twigs.*
[5] iuvencus, ī, m., *bullock.*
[6] dispālor, ārī, ātus, *wander about.*
[7] vīsus, ūs, m., *sight.*
[8] iniēcit, Hannibal is understood as subject.
[9] magister, rī, m., *master, commander.*
[10] ac dictātōrem, *to that of dictator.*
[11] in Lūcānīs, modifies sustulit.
[12] absens, *although not in command personally.*
[13] quīnquiēs, *five times.*

Hannibal, after retiring from Italy, is defeated by Scipio at Lama

21. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēnsum[1] revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, fīlium eius Scīpiōnis, quem ipse prīmō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hoc exhaustīs[2] iam patriae facultātibus cupīvit impraesentiārum[3] bellum compōnere,[4] quō valentior postea congrederētur. In colloquium convēnit, condiciōnēs nōn convēnērunt.[5] Post id factum paucīs diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōnflīxit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eo ex acie excesserant, insidiatī[6] sunt eī; quōs non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquōs ē fugā collegit; novīs delectibus[7] paucīs diēbus multīs contraxit.

---

[1] dēfēnsum, supine.
[2] exhaustīs, *drained.*
[3] impraesentiārum, *for the present.*
[4] compōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *settle, end.*
[5] convēnērunt, *were agreed upon.*
[6] īnsidior, ārī, ātus, *lie in wait for.*
[7] dēlēctus, us, m., *a recruiting.*

Hannibal at Home. His flight to Antiochus

22. Cum in apparandō[1] ācerrimē esset occupātus, Karthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercituī posteā praefuit rēsque in Africā gessit itemque Māgō frāter eius usque ad[2] P. Sulpicium C. Aurēlium cōnsulēs. Hīs[3] enim magistrātibus lēgātī Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī senātuī populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum iīs pācem fēcissent ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs[4] essent captīvīque redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōnsultō respōnsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod[5] Hannibalem cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimīcissimum nōminī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātrem eius Māgōnem. Hōc respōnsō Karthaginiēnsēs cōgnitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō secundō et vīcēsimo; ut enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc Karthāgine quotannīs annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī dīligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit ac[6] fuerat in bello. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn sōlum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānīs ex[7] foedere[8] penderētur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerāriō[9] repōnerētur.[10] Deinde M. Claudiō L. Furiō cōnsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Karthāginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī expōscendī grātiā missōs, priusquam iīs senātus[11] darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam[12] factā Poenī nāvēs duās, quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōnsequī, mīsērunt; bona eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs[13] disiēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

---

[1] apparō āre, āvī, ātus, *prepare.*
[2] ad, *to the time of.*
[3] Hīs magistrātibus, ablative absolute
[4] Fregellīs, *at Fregellae.*
[5] quod Hannibalem . . . etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent, *because they even then kept Hannibal in command of the army.*
[6] ac, *as.*
[7] ex, *in accordance with.*
[8] foedus, foederis, n., *treaty.*
[9] aerārium, ī, n., *treasury.*
[10] repōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *lay, restore.*
[11] senātus, *a hearing before the senate.*
[12] palam factā = nuntiātā.
[13] fundāmentum, ī, n., *foundation, groundwork.*

He arouses Antiochus to war against the Romans

23. At Hannibal annō quārtō, postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōnsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Africam accessit in fīnibus Cyrēnaeōrum, si[1] forte Karthāginiēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī[2] spē fīdūciāque indūcerentur,[3] cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficīscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excīvit.[4] Id ubi Poenī rescīvērunt, Māgōnem eādem, quā frātrem, absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illī[5] dēspērātīs rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla[6] ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est; namque aliī naufragiō,[7] aliī ā servulīs[8] ipsius interfectum eum scrīptum[9] relīquērunt. Antiochus autem, sī tam in gerendō bellō cōnsiliīs eius[10] pārēre voluisset quam[11] in suscipiendō īnstituerat, propius Tiberī[12] quam Thermopylīs dē summā imperiī dīmicāsset. Quem[13] etsī multa stultē[14] cōnārī vidēbat,[15] tamen nūllā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucīs nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iīsque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylīō marī cōnflēxit. Quō cum[16] multitūdine adversāriōrum suī[17] superārentur, ipse, quō cornū rem gessit, fuit superior.

---

[1] sī (to see), *if.*
[2] Antiochī spē fīdūciāque, *because of their faith and hope in Antiochus.*
[3] indūcerentur, *they could be drawn into.*
[4] excieō (or exciō), ēre (īre), cīvī (iī) citus (ītus), *call out, summon.*
[5] Illī, i. e., Hannibal and Mago.
[6] vēlum, ī, n., *sail.*
[7] naufragium, ī, n., *shipwreck.*
[8] servulus, ī, n., *a little slave.*
[9] scrīptum reliquērunt, *they left a record to the effect that.*
[10] eius, i. e., Hannibalis.
[11] quam in suscipiendō īnstituerat, *as he had done in beginning it.*
[12] Tiberī, dative with propius.
[13] Quem, i. e., Antiochus.
[14] stultē, *foolishly.*
[15] vidēbat, Hannibal is understood as subject.
[16] cum, concessive.
[17] suī, *his forces.*

He goes to Crete, and there saves his money by a trick

24. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset sī[1] suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētam ad Gortȳniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōnferret cōnsīderāret.[2] Vīdit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvīdisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; magnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle cōnsilium. Amphorās[3] complūrēs complet plumbō,[4] summās[5] operit[6] aurō et argentō. Hās, praesentibus prīncipibus, dēpōnit in templō Dīgnae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fideī crēdere. Hīs in errōrem inductīs, statuās aēneās,[7] quās sēcum portābat, omnī suā pecūniā completās eāsque in prōpatulō[8] domī abicit.[9] Gortȳniī templum magnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēterīs quam ab Hannibale, nē ille, īnscientibus iīs, tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

---

[1] sī suī fēcisset potestātem, *if he had given them a chance at him.*
[2] cōnsīderō, āre, āvī, ātus, *look at carefully, consider.*
[3] amphora, ae, f., *a two handled jar.*
[4] plumbō, *lead.*
[5] summās, sc. amphorās, *the tops of the jars.*
[6] operiō, īre, peruī, pertus, *cover.*
[7] aēneus, a, um, *bronze.*
[8] prōpatulum, ī, n., *courtyard.*
[9] *As if they were of no value.*

Hannibal goes to Prusias. His bit of stratagem

25. Sīc, cōnservātīs suīs rēbus Poenus, illūsīs[1] Crētēnsibus omnibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Ītaliam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticīs opibus minus[2] esse rōbustum,[3] conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adjungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat[4] ab eō[5] Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānīs amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbatur et marī et terrā; quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī. Sed utrobīque[6] Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societātem: quem sī remōvisset faciliōra sibi cētēra fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucīs diēbus erant dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitūdine; dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās[7] serpentēs[8] vīvās colligī eāsque in vāsa[9] fictilia[10] conicī. Hārum cum effēcisset magnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō, quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium, classiāriōs convocat iīsque praecipit, omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis[11] habeant sē dēfendere. Ad illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōnsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur ut[12] scīrent sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iīs pollicētur praemiō fore.

---

[1] illūdō, ere, lūsī, lūsum, *deceive.*
[2] minus, *not very.*
[3] rōbustus, a, um, *powerful.*
[4] dissideō, ēre, sēdī, sēssum, *differ.*
[5] eō, i. e., Prusias.
[6] utrobīque, *on both sides;* here, *on land and sea.*
[7] venēnātus, a, um, *poisonous.*
[8] serpēns, serpentis, f., *snake.*
[9] vās, vāsis, n. pl., vāsa, vāsōrum, *jar.*
[10] fictilis, e., *earthen.*
[11] satis habeant, *should consider it enough.*
[12] ut scīrent sē factūrum, *he would see to it that they would know.*

By his strategy he defeats Eumenes

26. Tālī cohortātiōne mīlitum factā classis ab utrīsque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōnstitūtā, priusquam sīgnum pugnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suīs, quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium[1] in scaphā[2] cum cādūceō[3] mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus est[4] quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset scrīptum. Tabellārius ducis nāve dēclārātā suīs,[5] eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā[6] epistulā nihil in ea repperit, nisi quae ad irrīdendum eum pertinērent. Cuius etsī causam mīrābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bīthȳnī Hannibalis praeceptō[7] ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit; quam[8] consecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō lītore erant collocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conicī coepta sunt. Quae[9] iacta initiō rīsum pugnantibus concitārunt, neque quārē id fieret peteret intellegī. Post quam autem nāvēs suās opplētās cōnspēxērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterritī cum quid[10] potissimum vītārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica[11] retulērunt. Sīc Hannibal cōnsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum sōlum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiīs parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

---

[1] Tabellārius, ī, m., *messenger, herald.*
[2] scaphā, *small boat.*
[3] cādūceus, i, m., *herald's staff.*
[4] professus est, *stated.*
[5] suīs, *to his own men.*
[6] solutā, *opened.*
[7] praeceptō, *in accordance with the command.*
[8] quam cōnsecūtus nōn esset, *he would not have reached safety.*
[9] Quae iacta, *the throwing of these.*
[10] quid potissimum vītārent, *what they should avoid most.*
[11] nauticus, a, um, *naval.*

His death by poison

27. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud[1] T. Quīntium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem cēnārent,[2] atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex iīs ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs[3] cōnscrīptī, quī Hannibale vīvō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs exīstimārent, lēgātōs in Bīthȳniam mīsērunt, in iīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent nē[4] inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitiī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent; locum ubi esset facile inventūros. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tēnēbat in castellō, quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedificiī exitūs habēret, scīlicet[6] verēns nē[7] ūsū venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā[9] prōspiciēns Hannibalī dīxit plūrēs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnēs forēs[10] aedificiī circumīret ac properē[11] sibi nūntiāret num[12] eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāsset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuītō factum, sed sē petī neque[13] sibi diūtius vītam esse retinendam. Quam[14] nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor[15] prīstinārum virtūtum, venēnum,[16] quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit.

---

[1] apud, *at the house of.*
[2] cēnōm, āre, āvī, ātus, *dine.*
[3] Patrēs cōnscrīptī, *senators.*
[4] nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret, *that he should not keep their greatest enemy with him.*
[5] comprehenderent, subjunctive representing imperative of direct discourse.
[6] scīlicet, *evidently.*
[7] nē ūsū veniret, *lest that should happen.*
[8] iānus, ae, f., *door.*
[9] apparēre, *appeared.*
[10] foris, foris, f., *door.*
[11] properē, *quickly.*
[12] num, *whether.*
[13] neque retinendam, *could not be preserved.*
[14] Quam, i. e., *vitam.*
[15] memor, memoris, *mindful.*
[16] venēnum, ī, n., *poison.*

His historians and his own writings

28. Sīc vir fortissimus, multīs variīsque perfunctus[1] labōribus, annō adquiēvit[2] septuāgēsimō. Quibus cōnsulibus interierit, nōn[3] convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōnsulibus mortuum in annālī[4] suō scrīptum relīquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque[5] hīc tantus vir tantīsque bellīs dīstrīctus[6] nōn nihil temporis tribuit litterīs. Namque aliquot eius librī sunt Graecō sermōne cōnfectī, in iīs ad[7] Rhodiōs dē[8] Cn. Manliī Vulsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestīs. Hūius[9] bellī[10] gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex hīs duo[11] quī cum eō in castrīs fuērunt simulque vīxērunt, quamdiū fortūna passa est, Sīlēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsliō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.

Sed nōs[12] tempus est hūius librī facere fīnem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius collātis utrōrumque[13] factīs, quī virī praeferendī sint, possit iūdicārī.

---

[1] perfungor, ī, fūnctus sum, *perform.*
[2] adquiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētus, *go to rest, die.*
[3] nōn convenit, *it is not agreed.*
[4] annālis, annālis, m., *record.*
[5] Atque, *and yet.*
[6] dīstringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus, *draw apart, engage.*
[7] ad Rhodiōs, i. e., liber ad Rhodiōs.
[8] dē, governs rēbus gestīs.
[9] Hūius, i. e., Hannibal.
[10] bellī gesta, deeds of war.
[11] duo, sc. sunt.
[12] nōs facere fīnem, *for me to make an end.*
[13] utrōrumque, i. e., Roman and Greek generals.

C. IULII CAESARIS

De Bello Gallico

Liber Tertius

Caesar sends Galba against the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni. Galba establishes winter quarters at Octodurus.

29. Cum in Ītaliam proficīscerētur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātes, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpēs quō magnō cum perīculō magnīsque cum portōriīs[1] mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant,[2] patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot[3] proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octōdūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle,[4] nōn magnā[5] adiectā[6] planitiē[7] altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum[8] hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit.[9] Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

---

[1] portoriīs, *customs duty.*
[2] cōnsuērant, contracted from cōnsuēverant, *were* (lit., *had become*) *accustomed.*
[3] aliquot, indeclin. adj., *several.*
[4] vallēs, vallis, f., *a valley.*
[5] nōn magnā = parvā.
[6] adiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, add, adiectā as an adj., *lying near.*
[7] planitiē, *plain.*
[8] Cum, causal.
[9] attribuō, ere, tribuī, tribūtus, *assign.*

Mountain tribes revolt and occupy the neighboring heights

30. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id[1] aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī[2] legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent; prīmum, quod legiōnem unam, neque[3] eam plēnissimam,[4] dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim[5] quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus[6] propter paucitātem[7] despiciēbant;[8] tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem[9] locī, cum ipsī[10] ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstractōs obsidum[11] nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis[12] culmina[13] Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere[14] sibi persuāsum habēbant.

---

[1] Id, explained by the following ut clause.
[2] renovō, āre, āvī, ātus, *renew.*
[3] neque, *and not.*
[4] plēnus, a, um, *full.*
[5] singillātim, adv., *one by one.*
[6] absentibus, abl. absol. with complūribus.
[7] paucitās, ātis, f., noun of pauci.
[8] dēspiciēbant, *despised.*
[9] propter inīquitātem, *on account of the unfavorable character.*
[10] ipsī, i. e., the mountaineers.
[11] obsidum nōmine, *under the name of hostages, as hostages.*
[12] possessiōnis, sc. causa.
[13] culmen, culminis, n., *top.*
[14] adiungō, ere, nxī, nctus, *join.*

The Romans meet in council and determine to defend their positions

31. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs, Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnesque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil de bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententias exquīrere[1] coepit. Quo in cōnsiliō cum tantum repentīnī perīculī[2] praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur neque subsidiō[3] venīrī[4] neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae eius modī sententiae dicēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim reī ēventum experīrī[5] et castra dēfendere.

---

[1] exquīrere, *ask for.*
[2] perīculī, partitive genitive with tantum.
[3] subsidiō, dative of purpose.
[4] venīrī, impersonal.
[5] experīrī and dēfendere, subjects of placuit.

The Romans are attacked by a larger force

32. Brevī spatiō interiectō,[1] vix ut iīs rēbus[2] quās constituissent comparandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs[3] ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaque[4] in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmo integrīs[5] vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā[6] tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc[7] superārī, quod diuturnitāte[8] pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs[9] vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum[10] ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo[11] dēfessō[12] ex pugnā excēdendī,[13] sed nē sauciō[14] quidem eius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

---

[1] interiectō, from inter-iaciō.
[2] rēbus, dative.
[3] hostēs, nom. as of the historical infinitives decurrere and conicere.
[4] gaesum, ī, n., *heavy javelin.*
[5] integrīs vīribus, abl. absol., denoting time; integer, gra, grum, *untouched, fresh.*
[6] frūstrā, *in vain.*
[7] hōc, ablative of specification.
[8] diūturnitāte, *long duration.*
[9] integrīs vīribus, abl. of description.
[10] rērum, partitive gen. with nihil.
[11] nōn, modo, sc. non.
[12] dēfessō, sauciō, indirect objects of dabātur.
[13] excēdendī, locī relinquendī, suī recipiendī, modify facultas.
[14] saucius, a, um, *wounded, hurt, injured.*

After fighting for six hours, Galba decides upon a sally

33. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur,[1] ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent, languidiōribusque[2] nostrīs vāllum scindere[3] et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī[4] centuriō, quem[5] Nervicō[6] proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsiliī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt[7] atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōres facit paulisper intermitterent[8] proelium ac tantummodo[9] tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō sīgno ex castrīs ērumperent[10] atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

---

[1] pugnārētur, *had been* (and was still being) *fought.*
[2] languidiōribus nostris, abl. absol. of cause.
[3] scindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *split, cut down.*
[4] prīmī pīlī, *of the first rank.*
[5] quem, subject of confectum esse.
[6] Nervicō, *of the Nervii.*
[7] accurrunt, *rushed up.*
[8] intermitterent, and the four following subjunctives represent the imperative of direct discourse.
[9] tantummodo, *only.*
[10] ērumpō, ere, rupī, ruptum, *burst forth.*

The Gauls are completely routed. Galba goes into winter quarters

34. Quod iussī[1] sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī[2] colligendī[3] hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā[4] fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs intercipiunt,[5] et ex hominum mīlibus[6] amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat,[7] plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs[8] armīsque[9] exūtīs[10] sē in castra mūnītiōnēsque suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō[11] sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat,[12] aliīs occurrisse rēbus[13] vidēbat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nullō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

---

[1] iussī sunt, sc. facere. The object of facere is quod.
[2] suī colligendī, *of collecting themselves*, i. e., *of rallying*.
[3] colligō, ere, lēgī, lectus, *collect*.
[4] commūtātā, *changed*.
[5] intercipiunt, *cut off*, *intercept*.
[6] ex mīlibus, modifies tertiā parte.
[7] cōnstō, stāre, stitī, stātus, *stand together*, *stand firm*. Impersonal, as here, *it was agreed*, *it was ascertained*.
[8] fundō, ere, fudī, fusus, *pour*, *throw*, *rout*.
[9] armīs, abl. of separation with exutis; latter agrees with copiis.
[10] exuō, ere, exuī, exūtus, *draw off*, *despoil*.
[11] aliō, *one*, *other*.
[12] meminerat, *remembered*.
[13] rēbus, *conditions*.

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *from, by.*
abeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *go away.*
absinthium, ī, n., *wormwood.*
absolūtiō, ōnis, f., *absolution.*
absolvō, ere, vī, ūtus, *release, free.*
abstergeō, ēre, rsī, rsus, *wipe away.*
ac (**atque**) *and, and also;* **ac** is not used before vowels.
accēdō, ere, accessī, accessum, *draw near, advance.*
accendō, ere, accendī, accensum, *enkindle, rouse.*
accidit, accidere, accidit, impers., *it happens.*
accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *receive.*
acclīnis, e, *inclined to, disposed to.*
accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call one to account, accuse.*
acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile.*
acētum, ī, n., *sour wine, vinegar.*
aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle.*
ācriter, *sharply, fiercely.*
acūmen, inis, n., *keenness.*
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, vigorous, keen, severe.*
ad, *to, towards,* prep. with acc.
ad multam noctem, *till late at night.*
addīcō, ere, xī, ctus, *adjudge, devote.*
addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead on, impel.*
adeō, adv., *so much, to such a degree.*
adeō, īre, iī, itus, *go to, visit.*
adhūc, *up to this time, still, hitherto.*
aditus, ūs, m., *approach.*
adiūtrix, īcis, f., *helper, promoter.*
administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *perform.*
admīror, -ārī, ātus, sum *wonder at, admire.*
admodum, *quite, very much.*
adorior, orīrī, ortus sum, *attack.*
adulēscēns, entis, m., *young man.*
adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *arrive.*
adventus, ūs, m., *approach, arrival.*
adversārius, iī, m., *adversary.*

adversō, āre, āvī, ātus, *oppose.*
adversus, a, um, *adverse.*
advocāta, ae, f., *advocate.*
advocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call* or *summon to.*
aedificium, ī, n., *building.*
aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *build, erect.*
aeger, ra, rum, *sick.*
aequus, a, um, *level.*
aestas, ātis, f., *summer.*
aestimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *determine estimate.*
aestus, ūs, m., *heat.*
aetas, ātis, f., *life, age.*
aeternus, a, um, *everlasting, eternal.*
afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring.*
ager, agrī, m., *field, land.*
agger, eris, m., *embankment, rampart.*
agmen, inis, n., *army* (on the march).
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *do.*
agricola, ae, m., *farmer.*
aiō, ———, ———, ———, *say.*
alacer, cris, cre, *eager.*
aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable.*
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj., *some.*
aliquis, aliquid, *some one, something.*
Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., *Allobroges,* a Gallic tribe.
altitūdō, inis, f., *depth, height.*
altus, a, um, *high, deep.*
amābilis, e, *worthy of love, lovely.*
amīcē, *in a friendly way.*
amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship.*
amīcus, ī, m., *friend.*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *lose.*
amō, āre, āvī, ātus, *love.*
amoenus, a, um, *delightful, pleasant.*
amor, ōris, m., *love.*
amplexō, āre, āvī, ātus, *embrace.*
amplius, *more.*
amplus, a, um, *great, glorious.*
ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*
angelus, ī, m., *angel.*
angō, ere, xī, ctus and **xus,** *bind, torment.*

angustiae, ārum, f. pl., *a narrow pass.*
angustus, a, um, *narrow.*
anima, ae, f., *air, the breath of life.*
animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus, *notice.*
animal, animālis, n., *animal.*
animō, āre, āvī, ātus, *animate, encourage.*
animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, courage.*
annus, ī, m., *year.*
ante, *before, in front of,* prep. with acc.
ante, adv., *before.*
anteā, *before, formerly.*
antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *precede.*
antīquus, a, um, *old, ancient.*
apertus, a, um, *open.*
apostolus, ī, m., *apostle.*
appareō, ēre, uī, itus, *appear, be evident.*
appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *name, call.*
appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, *approach.*
Aprīlis, e, adj., *of April.*
aptus, a, um, *suitable, fit.*
apud, prep. with acc., *among, with.*
aqua, ae, f., *water.*
aquila, ae, f., *eagle.*
āra, ae, f., *altar.*
arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *consider.*
arbor, oris, f., *tree.*
arceō, ēre, uī, ———, *keep from, hinder.*
arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *summon.*
archangelus, ī, m., *archangel.*
ardeō, ēre, -rsī, rsus, *take fire, kindle.*
arduus, a, um, *steep, difficult.*
Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus,* king of the Germans.
arma, ōrum, n. pl., *weapons, arms, armour.*
armātūra, ae, f., *equipment.*
armenta, ōrum, n. pl., *herds, cattle.*
armō, āre, āvī, ātus, *arm.*
arō, āre, āvī, ātus, *plough.*
arrīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *smile upon.*
arx, arcis, f., *castle.*
ascendō, ere, dī, sum, *ascend.*
asinus, ī, m., *ass.*

aspectus, ūs, m., *sight, look, appearance.*
asper, era, erum, *rough.*
aspiciō, ere, pēxi, pectus, *behold.*
assentātiō, ōnis, f., *flattery.*
assistō, ere, astitī, ———, *stand.*
Athēnae, ārum, f., *Athens.*
auctōritās, ātis, f., *authority.*
audācia, ae, f., *boldness.*
audācter, *courageously.*
audax, audācis, *bold, daring.*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *dare.*
audiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *hear.*
aufugiō, ere, fūgī, ———, *flee, run away.*
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase.*
augur, is, m. and f., *augur, soothsayer.*
auris, is, f., *ear.*
aurum, ī, n., *gold.*
aut, conj., *or.* **aut . . . aut** *either . . . or.*
autem, conj. (never first in a sentence), *but, however.*
auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help.*
auxilia, ōrum, n. pl., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*
Avāricum, ī, n., *Avaricum,* a Gallic town.
avē, imperative 2d sing. of **aveō, -ēre,** *farewell, hail.*
āvertō, ere, tī, versus, *avert, turn away, turn aside.*
avis, is, f., *bird.*
avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*

baptista, ae, m., *baptist.*
barbarus, a, um, *barbarous;* as noun, m., *a barbarian.*
beātus, a, um, *happy.*
Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *Belgians,* a tribe of Gaul.
bellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *make war, carry on war.*
bellum, ī, n., *war.*
bene, *well.*
benedīcō, ere, xī, ctus, *bless, praise.*
beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, favor.*
benigne, adv., *kindly, benevolently.*
benignitās, ātis, f., *kindness.*
bestia, ae, f., *animal, beast.*
bīduum, ī, n., *two days.*
bonus, a, um, *good.*

bōs, bŏvis, *ox.*
brevis, e, *short, brief.*
Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*

caedēs, is, f., *slaughter.*
caelum, ī, n., *sky, heaven* (climate, weather).
Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*
calamitās, ātis, f., *misfortune, calamity.*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus, *produce melodious sounds, sing, play.*
capio, ere, cēpī, captus, *take, adopt, capture.*
captīvus, a, um, *captive;* **captīvus** (as noun), *a captive.*
caput, itis, n., *head.*
carcer, eris, m., *any inclosed space, prison, jail.*
caro, carnis, f., *flesh, body.*
carpō, ere, carpsī, carptum, *pluck, pick.*
cārus, a, um, *dear.*
cassus, a, um, *empty, void.*
castellum, ī, n., *fort.*
castra, ōrum, n. pl., *a camp.*
cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, accident.*
catholicus, a, um, *universal, catholic.*
causa, ae, f., *cause, condition.*
causā, abl., *for the sake of;* always preceded by the dependent genitive.
cautus, a, um, *cautious, careful.*
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *yield.*
celer, eris, ere, *swift.*
celeritās, ātis, f., *swiftness.*
cēlō, āre, āvī, ātus, *keep secret, conceal.*
celeriter, *quickly.*
cernō, ere, ———, ———, *perceive.*
cernuus, a, um, *inclined forwards.*
certamen, inis, n., *contest, strife.*
certē, *surely.*
certus, a, um, *sure.* N. B. Phrase **certior fierī** (lit., to be made more certain), i. e., *to be informed.*
cēterī, ae, a, *the rest, the other.*
Christus, ī, m., *Christ.*
cinis, eris, m., *ashes.*
circiter, adv., *about.*
circum, prep. with acc., *around.*
circumdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead around.*

circumeō, īre, iī, itus, *go around, surround.*
circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *surround.*
citerior, ius, comp. adj., *nearer, hither.*
cīvis, is, m., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*
cīvitas, tātis, f., *state.*
clādēs, is, f., *destruction, defeat.*
clam, *secretly.*
clāmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call, cry out.*
clāmor, ōris, m., *loud cry, noise.*
clārus, a, um, *bright, splendid, happy.*
classis, is, f., *fleet.*
claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, *shut up, close, surround.*
clēmens, ntis, *mild, gentle.*
cliēns, clientis, m., *client.*
coeō, īre, īvī, ītus, *come together.*
coena, ae, f., *dinner, supper,* the principal meal taken about midday.
coepī, coepisse, *began, have begun.*
coerceō, ēre, uī, itus, *restrain, check.*
cōgitātio, ōnis, f., *thought.*
cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *think.*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *learn, become acquainted with.*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *force, compel, collect.*
cohors, rtis, f., *cohort.*
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage, exhort.*
collis, is, m., *hill.*
collocō, *place, arrange, station.*
colloquium, ī, n., *conversation, conference.*
colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, *converse, confer.*
comēs, comitis, m. and f., *companion, comrade.*
commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies.*
committo, ere, mīsī, missus, *I bring together;* with **proelium,** *to join battle.*
commūnio, ōnis, f., *communion.*
commūniō, īre, īvī, iī, ītus, *fortify strongly.*
commūnis, e, *common.*
commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change.*
comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *get ready.*
compatior, ī, passus, *suffer with one, have compassion for.*
comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, *find out.*
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *fill up.*
complūrēs, ra, gen., **-ium,** *very many.*

compos, potis, adj., *partaking of, sharing in.*
comprehendō, ere, dī, sus, *seize.*
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *grant.*
concilium, ī, n., *council.*
concipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *conceive.*
concordia, ae, f., *union, harmony, agreement.*
concurro, ere, currī, concursum, *run together.*
concursus, ūs, m., *a running together.*
condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*
conditor, ōris, m., *builder, founder.*
cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *bring together;* **se cōnferre,** *betake one's self.*
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *exhaust.*
confīdentia, ae, f., *confidence, trust.*
cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., *trust.*
cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *I establish.*
confiteor, ērī, fessus sum, *confess.*
confūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *restrain, check.*
coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus, *hurl.*
coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *unite.*
coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
coniūro, āre, āvī, ātus, *conspire, form a league together.*
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *endeavor, attempt.*
cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, *follow up.*
cōnsequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *pursue, overtake.*
cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus, *preserve.*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, *settle.*
consilium, ī, n., *deliberation, plan.*
cōnsistō, ere, cōnstitī, *consist.*
cōnspectus, ūs, m., *view, sight.*
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *see.*
constantia, ae, f., *firmness, fortitude, perseverance.*
cōnstat, stāre, stitit, *it is evident.*
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *decide, determine.*
cōnsuēscō, suēvī, suētum, *become accustomed.*
consuētūdō, inis, f., *custom, habit.*
cōnsul, is, m., *consul.*
cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *use up.*
contemnō, ere, contempsī, contemptum, *disregard, despise.*
contendō, ere, tendī, tentum, *hurry, hasten.*
contentus, a, um, *contented.*

continēō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold, keep together.*
contrā, *against,* prep. with acc.
contrītus, a, um, perf. pass. part. of **conterō,** *worn out, contrite.*
contrōversia, ae, f., *dispute.*
contumēlia, ae, f., *insult.*
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come together.*
convertō, ere, tī, sum, *turn.*
convicium, ī, n., *outcry, clamor, censure.*
convīva, ae, m. or f., *guest.*
convocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call together.*
cōpia, ae, f., *abundance, plenty;* in plur., *troops, forces.*
cor, cordis, n., *heart.*
cōram, adv. and prep., *in the presence of.*
cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).
corōna, ae, f., *wreath, crown.*
corpus, oris, n., *body.*
corruō, ere, uī, ———, *fall down, collapse.*
coruscō, āre, ———, ———, *shake, glitter.*
cottīdiē, adv., *every day, daily.*
Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus* (a man's name).
creātor, ōris, m., *creator.*
creātūra, ae, f., *creature.*
crēber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
crebrē, adv., *frequently.*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *believe.*
cremō, āre, āvī, ātus, *burn.*
creō, āre, āvī, ātus, *create, choose, elect.*
crucifixus, perf. part. of **crucifigō,** *crucified.*
crūdēlis, e, *cruel.*
cruentus, a, um, *bloody, stained with blood.*
crux, cis, f., *cross.*
culpa, ae, f., *guilt, fault.*
culpō, āre, āvī, ātus, *blame.*
cum, *because, since.*
cum, *with,* prep. with abl.
cum, *when,* conjunction.
cum, *though, although.*
cunctus, a, um, *whole, all.*
cupidus, a um, *fond, eager.*
cūr, *why.*
cūra, ae, f., *trouble, care.*

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *care for, take care of.*
currō, ere, cucurrī, ———, *fly, run.*
cūstōdia, ae, f., *custody.*
cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f., *guard, keeper.*

dē, *concerning,* prep. with abl.
dē tertiā vigiliā, *about the third watch* (a watch was equal to a fourth of the night).
dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, *owe;* with an infinitive, *ought.*
decem, num. adj., *ten.*
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, *decree, decide.*
decet, decēre, decuit, impers., *it becomes.*
decor, ōris, m., *comeliness, grace.*
dēditio, ōnis, f., *surrender.*
dēdō, ere, dēdidī, itus, *give up, surrender.*
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead away.*
dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt.*
dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus, *defend.*
dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f., *defence.*
dēfleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *lament, deplore.*
deiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *cast down, dejected.*
dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *delight.*
dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *destroy.*
dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *deliberate, consult.*
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lectum, *choose out, select.*
dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *emigrate, depart.*
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *point out, show, mention.*
dēnique, adv., *finally, at last.*
dērelinquō, ere, līquī, lictus, *forsake.*
dēscendō, ere, dī, sum, *come down, descend.*
dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus, *abandon, desert, neglect.*
dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātus, *long for, desire.*
dēsistō, ere, stitī, ———, *cease.*
dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātus, *despair.*
dēspiciō, ere, exī, ectus, *despise.*
dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *be wanting, fail.*
dēterior, ius, comp. adj., *worse.*
dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss, damage.*
deus, ī, m., *god.*
dēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *overcome.*
dexter, tra, trum, *right.*

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, appoint.*
dictātor, ōris, m., *dictator.*
dictum, ī, n., *word, utterance.*
diēs, diēī, m., *day.*
differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus, *differ.*
difficilis, e, *difficult.*
dignus, a, um, *worthy.*
dīligentia, ae, f., *diligence.*
dignitas, ātis, f., *dignity, rank.*
dignus, a, um, *worthy.*
dīligentia, ae, f., *diligence, carefulness, industry.*
dīmicō, *I contend.*
dīmitto, ere, mīsī, mīssus, *let go.*
dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *plunder.*
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart.*
disciplīna, ae, f., *discipline.*
discipulus, ī, m., *learner, disciple.*
discordia, ae, f., *disunion, discord.*
discutiō, ere, cussī, cussus, *strike asunder, scatter.*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *distribute.*
dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., *disagreement.*
dissimilis, e, adj., *unlike, dissimilar.*
disturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *throw into disorder, disturb.*
diū, adv., *a long time.*
Diviciācus, ī, m., *Diviciacus,* a powerful Haeduan.
dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, *divide, separate.*
dīvitiae, ārum, f. plu., *riches, wealth.*
dō, dăre, dedī, datus, *give, render.*
doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, *teach, show.*
doleo. ēre, uī, itus, *feel sorry, be pained, grieve.*
dolor, ōris, m., *pain, sorrow.*
dominus, ī, m., *lord, ruler, master, chief.*
domus, ūs, f., *house, home.*
dōnec, *until.*
dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *give, present.*
dōnum, ī, n., *gift.*
dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *doubt, be in doubt.*
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead.*
dulcēdo, inis, f., *sweetness.*
dulcis, e, *sweet.*
dum, *while, until, as long as.*

Dumnorīx, īgis, m., *Dumnorix,* a leader of the Haedui.
duodecim, indecl., *twelve.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader.*

ē, ex, *from, out of,* prep. with abl., **ex** is to be used before vowels or **h.**
ecclēsia, ae, f., *the Church.*
ēdoceō, ēre, uī, ēdoctus, *teach.*
ēducō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bring up, educate.*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead forth.*
efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *make, render.*
effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *escape.*
egēnus, a, um, *destitute, indigent.*
egeō, ēre, uī, ———, *need, want, lack.*
ego, meī, *I.*
ēgredior, ī, gressus sum, *march out.*
ēgregius, a, um, *excellent, eminent.*
Ēia, interj., *we beseech, indeed.*
ēiciō, ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, *thrust out;* **sē ēicere,** *rush forth.*
ēloquentia, ae, f., *eloquence.*
emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*
ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *reveal, disclose.*
eō, īre, īvī, (iī), itum, *go.*
eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*
eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*
epistula, ae, f., *letter.*
eques, itis, m., *horseman;* pl., *cavalry.*
equester, tris, tre, *equestrian, cavalry* (adjective).
equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*
equus, ī, m., *horse.*
ergō, adv., *therefore.*
errō, āre, āvī, ātus, *err, am mistaken.*
error, ōris, m., *wandering, mistake.*
ērudiō, īre, īvī, or **iī, ītus,** *instruct, teach.*
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *sally.*
esuriō, īre, īvī, *be hungry, suffer hunger.*
ēsūs, ūs, m., *food.*
et, conj., *and,* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*
etiam, *also, even.*
Eurōpa, ae, f., *Europe.*
exaudiō, īre, īvī, or **iī, ītus,** *hearken to.*
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart from.*

excidium, ī, n., *destruction.*
excitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *stir up, rouse.*
exeō, īre, iī, exitūrus, *go out, go forth.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
exilium, iī, n., *exile.*
exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *think, consider.*
exitium, ī, n., *destruction.*
exitus, ūs, m., *exit, passage.*
expallesco, ere, uī, *turn pale.*
expectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *wait for.*
expedītus, a, um, *unencumbered, light-armed.*
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *drive out.*
experior, īrī, pertus sum, *try, test.*
explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*
explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *examine.*
exprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, *force out, elicit.*
expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *take by storm.*
exsistō, ere exstitī, exstitum, *arise.*
exterus, a, um, *outside.*
extra, prep. with acc., *outside, beyond.*
extrēmus, a, um, *extreme, end of.*
exul, ulis, adj., *banished, exiled.*
exulto, āre, āvī, ātus, *exult, rejoice.*

fābula, ae, f., *story.*
facile, *easily.*
facilis, e, *easy.*
facinus, facinoris, n., *crime.*
faciō, ere, fēci, factus, *make, do.*
factiō, ōnis, f., *faction.*
facultās, ātis, f., *abundance, supply.*
fāma, ae, f., *report, reputation, fame, renown.*
faveō, ēre, favī, fautus, *favor, be well disposed.*
familiāris, e, *intimate, familiar.*
famulus, ī, m., *servant, attendant.*
favilla, ae, f., *ashes.*
fel, fellis, n., *bile, bitterness.*
fēlīx, fēlīcis, *fortunate, happy*
fēmina, ae, f., *woman.*
ferax, ferācis, *fertile.*
ferē, *almost, about, practically.*

ferrum, ī, n., *iron, sword.*
festīnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten, hurry.*
festus, a, um, *solemn, festive.*
fidēs, ĕī, f., *fidelity, loyalty.*
fīdūcia, ae, f., *confidence.*
fīlia, ae, f., *daughter.*
fīlius, ī (iī), m., *son.*
fīniō, īre, īvī or **iī, ītus,** *limit, bound, end.*
fīnis, is, m., *end, boundary;* in pl., *territory.*
firmitās, ātis, f., *firmness, strength.*
firmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *make firm, strengthen.*
firmus, a, um, *steadfast, strong.*
flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*
flamma, ae, f., *blaze, flame.*
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *weep.*
flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*
flōreō, ēre, uī, *flourish, bloom, thrive.*
flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*
flūmen, inis, n., *river.*
fluvius, ī (iī), m., *river.*
foedus, ĕris, n., *league, treaty, compact.*
forma, ae, f., *shape, appearance, beauty.*
fortis, f, *brave, courageous.*
fortiter, *bravely.*
fortitūdo, inis, f., *strength, bravery.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune.*
forum, ī, n., *market-place.*
fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench.*
frangō, ere, frēgī, fractus, *break, shiver.*
frāter, tris, m., *brother.*
frons, tis, f., *garland, chaplet.*
fructus, ūs, m., *fruit* (especially of trees).
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain.*
fruor, fruī, fructus sum, *enjoy, delight in.*
frustrā, adv., *in vain.*
fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee.*
fugitīvus, a, um, *fugitive;* **fugitīvus** (as noun), *a fugitive.*
fugō, āre, āvī, ātus, *put to flight.*
fulgeō, ēre, fulsī, ———, *flash, shine.*
fulgidus, a, um, *flashing, glittering.*

fulgor, ōris, m., *lightning, brightness, glory.*
fungor, fungī, functus sum, *perform, execute.*
furor, ōris, m., *rage, fury.*

Galba, ae, m., *Galba* (a man's name).
Gallī, ōrum, m. pl., *Gauls.*
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
Gallus, ī, m., *a Gaul.*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice, delight in.*
gaudium, ī, n., *joy.*
gemō, ere, uī, itus, *moan.*
Genava, ae, f., *Geneva,* a town of the Allobroges.
genitrix, īcis, f., *mother.*
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe.*
genus, eris, n., *race, kind.*
Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *Germans.*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *carry on, perform;* with **bellum,** *to wage.*
gladius, ī (iī), m., *sword.*
glōria, ae, f., *glory.*
gracilis, e, *slender.*
Graecī, ōrum, m. pl., *Greeks.*
grātia, ae, f., *grace, favor, thanks.*
grātus, a, um, *pleasing, welcome.*
gravis, e, *heavy, grievous, serious.*
gravitās, ātis, f., *heaviness, violence.*

habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *have, possess.*
habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *dwell, reside.*
Haeduī, ōrum, m. pl., *Haedui,* a Gallic tribe.
hasta, ae, f., *spear.*
Helvētiī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetii,* a Celtic tribe.
Hēva, ae, f., *Eve.*
hīberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*
Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland.*
Hibērus, ī, m., *Hiberus, a river in Spain.*
hīc, *here, at this place.*
hīc, haec, hōc, *this.*
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pass the winter.*
hiems, is, f., *winter.*
Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*
historia, ae, f., *a narrative of past events, history.*

hodiē, *today.*
homo, inis, m., *man.*
honor, ōris, m., *honor.*
honōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *respect, honor.*
hōra, ae, f., *hour.*
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *exhort.*
hortus, ī, m., *garden.*
hostia, ae, f., *victim.*
hostis, is, m., *enemy.*
hūc, adv., *hither.*
hūmānus, a, um, *human.*
humilis, e, *low, humble.*

iaceō, ēre, uī, itus, *lie.*
iam, adv., *now, already,* **nōn iam,** *no more, no longer.*
ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*
īdem, eadem, idem, *the same.*
ideō, adv., *on that account, therefore.*
Iēsus, u, m., *Jesus.*
idōneus, a, um, *suitable.*
ignāvia, ae, f., *cowardice.*
ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly.*
ignis, is, f., *fire.*
ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace, infamy.*
ignoscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus, *pardon, excuse.*
ille, illa, illud, *that.*
imber, imbris, m., *rainstorm.*
immensus, a, um, *immeasurable, boundless.*
immortālis, e, *immortal.*
impedīmentum, i, n., *hindrance;* plural, *baggage.*
impediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus, *impede, hinder.*
impendeō, ēre, ———, ———, *overhang, threaten.*
imperātor, ōris, m., *commander.*
imperītus, a, um, *inexperienced.*
imperium, ī, n., *rule, command.*
imperō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*
impetus, ūs, m., *onset, attack.*
implōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *entreat.*
impūne, adv., *with impunity.*
in, *into;* prep. with acc.
in, *in, on,* prep. with abl.

in animō habeō, *I have in mind, intend.*
incarnātiō, ōnis, f., *incarnation.*
incendium, ī, n., *fire, conflagration.*
incendō, ere, cendī, census, *set on fire.*
incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *begin.*
incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *urge on, encourage.*
incola, ae, m., *inhabitant.*
incolō, ere, uī, cultus, *inhabit.*
incolumis, e, *unharmed.*
incommodum, ī, n., *disaster.*
inde, adv., *thence, thereupon.*
indignus, a, um, *unworthy.*
indulgentia, ae, f., *pardon.*
indulgeō, ēre, indulsī, indultus, *be kind, indulge in* (a thing).
ineō, īre, iī, itus, *enter upon;* **consilium inīre,** *form a plan.*
īnferior, ius, *inferior.*
īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, *bring upon.*
īnferus, a, um, *below.*
infestus, a, um, *hostile, dangerous.*
īnfīrmus, a, um, *weak.*
infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour in, pour upon.*
ingemīscō, ere, uī, ———, *groan, sigh over.*
ingenium, ī, n., *talent, natural disposition.*
inimīcus, ī, *an enemy* (personal enemy as opposed to **hostis,** a public enemy).
initium, ī, n., *beginning.* **initiō,** *in the beginning, at first.*
iniuria, ae, f., *injury.*
inopia, ae, f., *lack, need.*
inquam, ———, ———, ———, *say.*
īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., *ambush, plot.*
īnstitūtum, i, n., *institution.*
īnstō, āre, āvī, ātus, *press on.*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *fit out.*
īnstruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus, *draw up, arrange.*
īnsula, ae, f., *island.*
intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *know, understood.*
inter, prep. with acc., *among, between, in the midst of.*
inter sē dare, *to exchange, give each other.*
interimō, ere, ēmī, emptus, *destroy, kill.*
interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *cut off, hinder.*

intereā, adv., *in the meanwhile.*
intereō, īre, iī, itūrus, *perish.*
interest, *it concerns.*
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *kill.*
interim, *in the meanwhile.*
interior, ius, *inner.*
interitus, ūs, m., *ruin, destruction.*
intersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be present, at.*
intrā, *within*, prep. with acc.
intrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *walk in, enter.*
inultus, a, um, *unavenged, not vindicated.*
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *find, come upon.*
invidia, ae, f., *envy.*
invītus, a, um, *unwilling, reluctant.*
Iōannis, is, m., *John.*
ipse, a, um, *self.*
īra, ae, f., *anger, wrath.*
is, ea, id, *that; he, she, it, they* (pl.).
iste, ista, istud, *that* (of yours).
ita, *thus, so.*
itaque, *and thus, therefore.*
Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy.*
iter, itineris, n., *journey, march.*
iterum, *again, a second time.*
iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, *order.*
iūcundus, a, um, adj., *agreeable, pleasant, delightful.*
iūdex, icis, m., *judge.*
iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *judge, adjudge.*
iugum, ī, n., *yoke; ridge* (of mountains).
iūmentum, i, n., *beasts of burden.*
iungō, ere, iunxī, iunctum, *join;* **foedus iungō**, *form an alliance* **amīcitiam iungō**, *make friendship.*
iūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *swear, take oath.*
iūs, iūris, n., *right, power.*
iūs iūrandum; gen. **iūris iūrandī**, n., *oath.* (Each word is declined separately.)
iustitia, ae, f., *justice.*
iūstus, a, um, *just, lawful, true.*
iuvenis, is, m., *young man.*

Kalendae, ārum, g., *Kalends* (first of the month).

labor, ōris, m., *labor.*
labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *work, suffer.*
lacessō, ere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *harass.*
lacrimae, ārum, f. pl., *tears.*
laedō, ere, laesī, laesus, *hurt, injure.*
laetitia, ae, f., *joy, gladness.*
laetō, āre, āvī, ātus, *delight, cheer.*
laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful, delightful.*
lapīs, idis, m., *stone.*
lassus, a, um, *faint, weary.*
lateō, ēre, uī, ———, *lurk, be hidden.*
latro, latrōnis, m., *robber, highwayman.*
lātus, a, um, *broad.*
latus, eris, n., *side, flank.*
laudābilis, e, *praiseworthy, laudable.*
laudō, āre, āvī, ātus, *praise.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lēgātus, ī, m., *lieutenant, envoy.*
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion.*
lēniō, īre, īvī, or **iī, ītus,** *mollify, mitigate.*
lēnis, e, *soft, mild, gentle.*
levāmen, inis, n., *solace, consolation.*
levis, e, *light.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*
libenter, *willingly, with pleasure.*
līber, era, erum, *free.*
līberī, ōrum (um), m. pl., *children* (free born).
līberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *set free.*
lībertās, tātis, f., *liberty.*
lignum, ī, n., *wood.*
licet, licēre, licuit, impers., *it is permitted.*
litterae, ārum, f., *a letter, literature.*
lītus, oris, n., *shore.*
locus, ī, m., *place, spot.*
longē, adv., *far.*
longus, a, um, *long.*
loquax, ācis, *talkative, loquacious.*
loquor, ī, locūtus sum, *speak.*
lūceō, ēre, lūxī, ———, *shine.*
lūcidus, a, um, *bright, shining.*

luctus, ūs, m., *mourning.*
lūdibrium, ī, n., *mockery, sport;* **habeō in lūdibriō,** *deride, mock.*
ludus, ī, m., *play, game.*
lūna, ae, f., *moon.*
lux, lūcis, m., *light.*
luxūria, ae, f., *extravagance, luxury.*

Magdalēna, ae, f., *Magdalene.*
magis, *more, rather;* comp. of **magnopere.**
magister, trī, m., *master, teacher.*
magnificentia, ae, f., *grandeur, splendor, greatness.*
magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate.*
magnitūdo, inis, f., *size, extent.*
magnopere, *greatly, earnestly.*
magnus, a, um, *large, great.*
māiestas, ātis, f., *grandeur, majesty.*
maiōrēs, um, m. pl., *ancestors.*
maledictus, a, um, *accursed.* As subst., **maledictum, i.,** n., *a curse.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, ———, *be more willing, prefer.*
mandātum, ī, n., *command, order.*
mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *assign.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
manus, ūs, f., *hand; band, force* (of troops).
mare, is, n., *sea.*
margarīta, ae, f., *pearl.*
Marīa, ae, f., *Mary.*
maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime.*
Massilia, ae, f., *Marseille.*
māter, tris, f., *mother.*
mātūrus, a, um, *right, proper, speedy.*
maximē, *especially;* sup. of **magnopere.**
medicīna, ae, f., *remedy, cure.*
medius, a, um, *middle, middle of.*
melior, ius, *better,* comp. of **bonus.**
meminī, meminisse, *remember.*
memor, oris, *mindful.*
memoria, ae, f., *memory, recollection.*
memorō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call to mind,* in pass. voice, *remember.*
mendācium, ī, n., *lie.*
mens, mentis, f., *heart, mind.*
mensis, is, m., *a month.*
mereor, ērī, meritus sum, *deserve.*

messis, is, f., *harvest.*
metus, ūs, m., *fear, dread.*
meus, a, um, *my.*
Michāēl, ēlis, m., *Michael.*
migrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *go, move, wander.*
mihi est in animō, *I have in mind, intend.*
mīles, itis, m., *soldier.*
mīlitāris, e, *military.*
mīrus, a, um, *wonderful, marvellous.*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus, *mix, mingle.*
miser, a, um, *wretched, unfortunate.*
misereor, ērī, itus sum, *pity, have mercy on.*
miseret, miserēre, miseritum est, impers., *it excites pity.*
misericordia, ae, f., *pity.*
misericors, cordis, adj., *merciful.*
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*
modestia, ae, f., *moderation, modesty.*
modo, *just, just now.*
modus, ī, m., *manner, kind.*
moestitia, ae, f., *sorrow, grief.*
moestus, a, um, *dejected, melancholy.*
moneō, ēre, uī, itus, *advise, warn.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
monstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *show.*
mora, ae, f., *delay.*
morbus, ī, m., *illness, sickness, disease.*
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*
moror, ārī, ātus sum, *tarry, delay.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
mortuus, a, um, perf. part. of **morior,** *die.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom;* pl., *manners.*
mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt.*
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*
mox, *soon.*
mulier, eris, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, dinis, f., *multitude.*
multus, a, um, *much;* pl., *many.*
mundus, ī, m., *the world, earth.*
mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *fortify.*
mūnītiō, onis, f., *fortification.*
mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*

mūsa, ae, f., *muse* (goddess).
mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *change, alter.*
mūnus, eris, n., *duty, favor, gift.*
myrrha, ae, f., *myrrh.*

nam, *for.*
nancīscor, ī, nactus sum, *procure.*
narrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *relate, tell.*
nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *be born.*
nātālis, is, m., *a birthday.*
nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation, tribe.*
nātīvitas, tātis, f., *birth, nativity.*
nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*
nātus, a, um, perf. part. of **nascor,** *born.*
nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*
nāvālis, e, *naval.*
nāvis, is, f., *ship.*
-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, attached to emphatic word, and expecting either a negative or affirmative answer.
nē, *not.*
nē, *lest, that . . . not.*
nē . . . quidem, *not even;* emphasizes the expression placed between the **nē** and the **quidem.**
necesse est, *it is necessary.*
nēcō, āre, āvī, ātus, *murder, kill.*
neglegō, ere, ēxī, ēctus, *neglect.*
negōtium, ī (**iī**), n., *business.*
nēmō, m., *no one,* dat., **nēminī,** acc., **nēminem;** gen. and abl., not used.
neque (**nec**), *nor.*
nihil, indecl. n., *nothing.*
nihilō, abl., *by nothing.*
nīl, nihil, or **nihilum,** m., *indeed, nothing.*
nimis, adv., *too much, excessively.*
nisi, *unless.*
nitescō, ere, nituī, ———, *glitter, shine.*
nōbilis, e, *noble.*
noceō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *injure, harm.*
nocturnus, a, um, *at night.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ———, *be unwilling, will not.*
nōmen, inis, n., *name.*

nōn, adv., *not.*
nōndum, *not yet.*
nōnne, interrogative particle expecting the answer 'yes.'
nōnnūllus, a, um, *some.*
noster, tra, trum, *our;* **nostrī,** *our men.*
novus, a, um, *new.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
nūdus, a, um, *bare, naked.*
num, interrogative particle expecting the answer 'no;' in indirect questions, *whether.*
numerus, ī, m., *number.*
numquam, *never.*
nunc, *now,* temporal adv.
nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *announce.*
nūntius, ī (iī), m., *messenger.*

ob, *on account of,* prep. with acc.
oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum, *forget.*
obscūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *darken, obscure.*
obses, idis, m., *hostage.*
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *blockade.*
obsidiō, ōnis, f., *siege.*
obstupus, a, um, *bent, perverse.*
obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātus, *obey.*
obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *occupy, hold.*
occāsiō, ōnis, f., *occasion, opportunity.*
occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *kill.*
occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, *take possession of, occupy.*
ōcior, ius, *swifter.*
oculus, ī, m., *eye.*
ōdī, ōdisse, *hate.*
odium, ī, n., *hatred.*
officium, ī, n., *duty.*
ōmen, inis, n., *foreboding.*
omnīnō, adv., *altogether, at all.*
omnipotēns, gen., **ntis,** *almighty.*
omnis, e, *all, every.*
opera, ae, f., *assistance.*
opīniō, ōnis, f., *opinion, expectation.*
oportet, oportere, oportuit, impers., *it is fitting.*
oppidānus, ī, m., *inhabitant of a town, townsman.*
oppidum, ī, n., *town, walled town.*

opportūnus, a, um, *fit, opportune.*
opprīmō, ere, pressī, pressus, *overwhelm.*
oppugnātiō, ōnis, f., *siege.*
oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *I attack, assault.*
ops, opis, f., *power, help;* in pl., *resources.* Nom. sing. is not used.
optō, āre, āvī, ātus, *desire.*
opus, eris, n., *work, labor.*
opus est, *it is necessary.*
ōra, ae, f., *coast.*
ōrātio, ōnis, f., *speech, oration.*
ōrātor, ōris, m., *orator, envoy.*
ordo, inis, m., *order, rank* or *line* (of soldiers).
ornāmentum, i, n., *ornament, decoration.*
ornātus, ūs, m., *ornament, dress.*
ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pray, ask, request.*
ostendō, ere, dī, sum, *show.*
ōtium, ī, n., *leisure, idleness.*
ovis, is, f., *sheep.*

pābulum, ī, n., *forage.*
paene, *almost, nearly.*
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, impers., *it causes regret.*
pāgus, ī, m., *district, village.*
palūs, lūdis, f., *marsh.*
pār, paris, *equal.*
parātus, a, um, *ready, prepared.*
parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *spare.*
parēns, entis, m. and f., *parent.*
pareō, ēre, uī, itus, *obey.*
pariēs, etis, m., *wall.*
parō, *I prepare, get ready.*
pars, partis, f., *part.*
parsīmōnia, ae, f., *economy.*
parum, adv., *little.*
parvus, a, um, *small.*
passiō, ōnis, f., *suffering, passion.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet).
pateō, ēre, patuī, *lie open.*
pater, tris, m., *father.*
patibulum, ī, n., *gibbet.*
patior, ī, passus sum, *suffer.*
patria, ae, f., *native country, fatherland.*

patrōnus, ī, m., *protector, defender.*
paucī, ae, a, *few,* used only in pl.
paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness, small number.*
paullātim, *little by little, gradually.*
paulō, abl., *by a little.*
paulum, adv., *a little.*
Paulus, ī, m., *Paul.*
pauper, eris, *poor.*
paupertas, ātis, f., *poverty.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
peccātor, ōris, m., *sinner.*
peccātum, ī, n., *sin.*
peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, *transgress, sin.*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
pedes, itis, m., *foot-soldier;* in pl., *infantry.*
peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *rout, defeat.*
pendeō, ēre, pependī, ———, *hang down, depand.*
per, *through, by means of,* prep. with acc.
peragō, ere, ēgī, actus, *finish, accomplish.*
perdō, ere, didī, ditus, *lose.*
perdūcō, ere, xī, ctus, *bring, guide.*
perennis, e, *unceasing, perpetual.*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *carry through, convey; endure.*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *accomplish.*
perfodiō, ere, fōdī, fossum, *pierce through, transfix.*
perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*
perīculōsus, a, um, *dangerous.*
perīculum, ī, n., *danger.*
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *permit.*
permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *influence, arouse.*
perniciēs, ēī, f., *destruction, ruin.*
perpaucus, a, um, *very little, very few.*
perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual.*
persequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow up.*
persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *persuade.*
perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *terrify.*
perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *agitate, disturb.*
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come, arrive.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
petō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus, *seek, request.*

Petrus, ī, m., *Peter.*
pietās, ātis, f., *affection, piety.*
piger, ra, rum, *unwilling, lazy.*
pigritia, ae, f., *sluggishness, laziness, idleness.*
piget, *it disgusts.*
pius, a, um, *pious.*
placeō, ēre, uī, placitūrus, *please.*
placō, āre, āvī, ātus, *reconcile, pacify.*
planitiēs, ēī, f., *plain.*
plāga, ae, f., *wound.*
planctus, ūs, m., *wailing, lamentation.*
plangō, ere, xī, ctus, *beat, strike.*
plaudō, ere, sī, sus, *strike, applaud.*
plēbs, is, f., *common people.*
plēnus, a, um, *full.*
plērīque, aeque, aque, *most.*
plōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *weep.*
plūs, comparative of **multus.**
poēma, ătis, n., *a composition in verse, a poem.*
poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*
poēta, ae, m., *poet.*
polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise.*
Pompeius, Pompeī, m., *Pompey, a man's name*
pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *place, lay aside.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, establish.*
Pontius Pīlātus, *Pontius Pilate,* governor of Judaea, in the time of Christ.
populus, ī, m., *people.*
porta, ae, f., *gate.*
portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry, bring, convey.*
portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*
possessiō, ōnis, f., *possession.*
possum, posse, potuī, ———, *be able.*
post, adv., *afterwards.*
post, *after,* prep. with acc.
posteā, *afterwards, later on.*
posterus, a, um, *following.*
postquam, *after,* conjunction.
postrēmō, adv., *at last, in the end.*
postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*

potentia, ae, f., *power.*
potestās, ātis, f., *power, opportunity.*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *take possession of, acquire.*
pōtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *drink.*
praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, *grant, give, offer.*
praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *enjoin.*
praeclārus, a, um, *splendid, grand.*
praeco, ōnis, m., *crier, herald.*
praeda, ae, f., *booty.*
praedō, ōnis, m., *robber.*
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *put in charge.*
praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send ahead, dispatch.*
praemium, ī, n., *reward.*
praesepium, iī, n., *crib, manger.*
praesidium, ī, n., *garrison.*
praestat, *it is better.*
praestō, āre, āvī, ātus, *perform, make, surpass.*
praesum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be in charge of.*
praetereā, *besides.*
praetor, ōris, m., *praetor.*
precor, ārī, ātus, *pray, beseech.*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus, *press, crowd.*
pretiōsus, a, um, *valuable, precious.*
prex, precis, f., *a prayer, entreaty.*
prīmus, a, um, *first.*
prīmō, *first, firstly.*
prīnceps, cipis, m., *chief.*
principium, iī, n., *beginning.*
prior, us, *former, before.*
prīstinus, a, um, *pristine, former, early.*
prīvātus, a, um, *private.*
prō, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; instead of; in behalf of; in accordance with.*
probō, āre, āvī, ātus, *approve.*
probus, a, um, *good, honest, virtuous.*
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *advance.*
procul, adv., *far, afar off.*
prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run forward.*
prōdigium, iī, n., *unusual sign, foreboding, prodigy.*
prōditiō, ōnis, f., *betrayal, treason.*
proelium, ī (iī), n., *battle.*

profero, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bring forth.*
proficīscor, ī, fectus sum, *set out.*
profugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, escape.*
prōgredior, ī, gressus sum, *advance, go forward.*
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *keep off, keep away* (transitive).
prōiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *throw, cast.*
prōmissio, ōnis, f., *promise.*
prope, *near.*
properō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten, hurry.*
propior, ius, *nearer.*
propitius, a, um, *favorable, gracious.*
propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*
protēnus, *forthwith, straightway.*
prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *provide, take care.*
prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
proximus, a, um, *nearest, next.*
prūdens, entis, *skilled, wise.*
prūdentia, ae, f., *prudence.*
pūblicus, a, um, *public.*
pudet, *it shames.*
puella, ae, f., *girl.*
puer, ī, m., *boy.*
pugna, ae, f., *fight, battle.*
pugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *fight.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful, pretty.*
pulchritūdo, inis, f., *beauty.*
pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust.*
putō, āre, āvī, ātus, *believe, think, consider.*

quā, *where?*
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *inquire.*
quamquam, *although.*
quandō, *when?*
quantus, a, um, *how much, how great?*
quārē, adv., *wherefore, why?*
quasi, adv., *as if, like.*
-que, *and,* enclitic, conjuction.
quercus, ūs, f., *oak.*
quī, quae, quod, *who, which.*
quia, conj., *because.*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam,** *a certain.*

quīn, *but that.*
quinque, num. adj., *five.*
quis, quid, interr. pron., *who, what?*
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), *any, any one.*
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quicque), *each.*
quisquis, quaeque, quodquod, subst. **quicquid, quidquid,** pron. rel., *whoever, whatever.*
quō, *in order that;* regularly used when followed by a comparative.
quō, *whither,* interrogative and relative adv.
quod, *because.*
quōminus, *from* (only with verbs of hindering).
quondam, *formerly.*
quoniam, *inasmuch as,* conj.
quoque, *also,* always follows the word it modifies.
quum, see **cum.**

ratiō, ōnis, f., *reason.*
recēdō, ere, recessī, recessum, *go back, retreat.*
recēns, recentis, *recent.*
receptus, ūs, m., *a drawing back, retreat.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *take back;* with reflexive **sē,** to retreat.
recordō, āre, āvī, ātus, *recollect, remember.*
recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *refuse.*
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *return, give back; render.*
redeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *return.*
redimō, ere, ēmī, emptus, *buy back, redeem.*
redivīvus, a, um, *that lives again, renewed.*
regnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *rule, reign.*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead back.*
referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back.*
refugium, ī, n., *refuge.*
rēgīna, ae, f., *queen.*
regiō, ōnis, f., *region.*
rēgnum, ī, n., *kingdom.*
regō, ere, rēxī, rectus, *rule.*
reiciō, ere, reiēcī, reiectus, *hurl back.*
relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus, *leave, leave behind.*
reliquus, a, um, *remaining.*
remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
remigrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *go back.*
reminīscor, ī, *remember.*

remissio, ōnis, f., *remission.*
renovō, āre, āvī, ātus, *renew.*
renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bring back word, report.*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel.*
repentīnus, a, um, *sudden.*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, *discover.*
rēs, rĕī, f., *thing.*
rēs, pūblica, gen., **reī pūblicae,** f., *state, republic.*
rescindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *tear down.*
resistō, ere, restitī, *resist.*
resonō, āre, āvī, ātus, *resound, reecho.*
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *look back, look about.*
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, *answer, reply.*
respōnsum, ī, n., *answer.*
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *restore.*
resurgō, surgere, surrexī, surrectus, *rise again.*
resurrectio, ōnis, f., *resurrection.*
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *retain.*
reus, ī, m., *defendant, prisoner.*
revertor, ī, reversus sum, *return.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*
Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*
rīpa, ae, f., *bank* (of a river).
risus, ūs, m., *laughter.*
rītus, ūs, m., *religious ceremony, rite.*
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask.*
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman;* ———, as noun, m., *a Roman.*
rōsa, ae, f., *rose.*
rubeō, ēre, ———, ———, *grow red, blush.*
rūrsus, *again.*

Saba, ae, f., *Saba,* the largest town in Arabia Felix, noted for its frankincense, myrrh, etc.
sacrificium, ī, n., *sacrifice.*
sacrōsanctus, a, um, *inviolable, sacred.*
saeclum, see *saeculum.*
saeculum, ī, n., *race, generation.*
saepe, adv., *often, frequently.*
saevitās, ātis, f., *rage, fury.*
sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*

saltō, āre, āvī, ātus, *dance.*
salūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*
salutō, āre, āvī, ātus, *greet.*
salvātor, ōris, m., *saviour, preserver.*
salvē, imperative 2d sing. of **salveō, -ēre,** *be well, hail.*
salvō, āre, āvī, ātus, *save.*
salvus, a, um, *safe, sound.*
sanctus, a, um, *sacred, holy.*
sanguis, inis, m., *blood.*
sapiēns, entis, *wise.*
sapientia, ae, f., *wisdom.*
satis, *enough,* indecl.
scēna, ae, f., *stage, scene.*
schola, ae, f., *school.*
sciō, īre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write;* of laws, *draw up.*
scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*
sē, reflexive, *he, himself, herself, themselves.*
secrētum, ī, n., *secret, mystery.*
sēcūrus, a, um, *free from care, untroubled.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *sit.*
sedīle, is, n., *seat.*
sēditio, ōnis, f., *uprising, revolt, rebellion.*
sēmen, inis, n., *seed.*
semper, adv., *always, ever.*
senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*
senectus, ūtis, f., *old age, senility.*
sententia, ae, f., *opinion.*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel.*
septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*
sepulchrum, ī, n., *burial place, grave.*
sepultus, a, um, perf. part. of **sepeliō,** *bury.*
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., *Sequani, a tribe of Gaul.*
sequestrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *remove, separate.*
sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *seek, follow.*
serēnus, a, um, *fair, clear, bright.*
sermō, ōnis, m., *conversation.*
serpens, entis, m., *snake, serpent.*
servitūs, ūtis, f., *servitude, bondage.*
servō, āre, āvī, ātus, *keep, save, preserve.*

servus, ī, m., *slave, servant.*
sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred.*
sex, num. adj., *six.*
sī, *if.*
Sibylla, ae, f., *a prophetess, Sibyl.*
sīc, so, *in this way.*
sīcut, adv., *just as, as.*
sīgna īnferō, *charge* (literally, bear the standards against).
signum, ī, n., *sign, standard.*
silentium, iī, n., *silence.*
silva, ae, f., *forest.*
similis, e, *like.*
Simo, ōnis, m., *Simon.*
simul, *together, at the same time.*
simul ac (atque), *as soon as.*
sine, *without,* prep. with abl.
sinister, tra, trum, *left.*
sitiō, īre, īvī, or **iī,** ———, *be thirsty, suffer thirst.*
societās, ātis, f., *association, alliance.*
socius, ī (iī), m., *comrade, ally, companion.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*
sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *rouse, instigate.*
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, of ships, unmoor;* **nāvēs solvere,** *set sail.*
sonitus, ūs, m., *noise, sound, din.*
sonus, ī, m., *noise, sound.*
soror, ōris, f., *sister.*
spargō, ere, sī, sus, *scatter, hurl.*
spatium, ī, n., *space, time, opportunity.*
spectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *behold, see.*
spērō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hope, hope for.*
spēs, speī, f., *hope.*
spīritus, ūs, m., *a breath, spirit.*
statim, *at once, immediately.*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *decide.*
stella, ae, f., *star.*
stricte, adv., *rigidly, strictly.*
studeō, ēre, uī, ———, *be eager for* (with dative); **novīs rēbus studēre,** *to be eager for a revolution.*
stultitia, ae, *f., folly.*
stultus, a, um, *foolish, silly.*

stupeō, ēre, uī, ———, *be astonished, be amazed.*
suāvis, e, *sweet, pleasant, agreeable.*
sub, *under,* prep. with abl.
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *withdraw.*
subeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *approach.*
subitō, *suddenly.*
sublevō, āre, āvī, ātus, *relieve.*
submitto, ere, mīsī, missus, *send, despatch.*
subsidium, ī, n., *assistance.*
suffrāgium, ī, n., *assent, approbation.*
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be.*
sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take.*
superbia, ae, f., *haughtiness, pride, insolence.*
superbus, a, um, *haughty, proud, insolent.*
superior, ius, *higher.*
superō, *I overcome.*
supersum, esse, fuī, *remain, be left.*
superus, a, um, *above.*
supplex, icis, adj., *humble, beseeching.*
supplicium, ī, n., *torture, punishment.*
supplicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pray, implore.*
suspendō, ere, dī, sum, *hang up, suspend.*
suspīciō, ōnis, f., *suspicion.*
suspīrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *sigh.*
sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, *withstand.*
suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their.*

taedet, *it wearies.*
talentum, ī, n., *a talent* (not a coin), but a certain number of pounds of gold or silver equivalent to about $1200.
talis, e, *such.*
tam, *so* (of degree).
tamen, *nevertheless, yet.*
tangō, ere, tetigī, tactus, *touch.*
tantus, a, um, *so much, so great.*
tardō, āre, āvī, ātus, *retard, check.*
tegō, ere, texi, tectus, *cover.*
tēlum, ī, n., *javelin.*
temere, *rashly.*
tempestās, ātis, f., *weather, storm.*
templum, ī, n., *temple, church.*
temptō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attempt, make trial of.*

tempus, oris, n., *time.*
teneō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold.*
tergum, ī, n., *back.*
terminus, ī, m., *limit, end.*
terra, ae, f., *land, country.*
terror, ōris, m., *terror, alarm.*
tertius, a, um, *third.*
thronus, ī, m., *throne.*
timeō, ēre, uī, ———, *fear.*
timidus, a, um, *fearful, afraid.*
timor, ōris, m., *fear.*
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, *lift up, raise up.*
tot, *so many,* indecl.
tōtus, a, um, *the whole, all.*
trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *hand over.*
trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead across.*
trāns, *across,* prep. with acc.
trānseō, īre, iī, itus, *cross.*
transfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*
trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *transport.*
tremō, ere, uī, ———, *shake, tremble.*
tremor, ōris, m., *shaking, tremor.*
trēs, tria, num. adj., *three.*
tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune.*
tribuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *grant, give.*
trīduum, ī, n., *three days.*
Trīnitas, ātis, f., *the Trinity.*
tristis, e, *sad.*
tristitia, ae, f., *sadness, grief.*
tū, tuī, *thou, you.*
triumphō, āre, āvī, ātus, *celebrate, triumph.*
tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*
tueor, ērī, ———, ———, *guard, watch.*
Tullia, ae, f., *Tullia,* a woman's name.
tum, *then, at that time.*
tumba, ae, f., *tomb.*
tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising.*
turba, ae, f., *crowd, multitude.*
turbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *embarrass, disturb, trouble.*
turgescō, ere, ———, ———, *swell.*
turpis, e, *base.*

turris, is, f., *tower.*
tūs, tūris, n., *incense.*
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*
tuus, a, um, *your.*

ubi, adv., *where, when.*
ullus, a, um, *any.*
ulterior, ius, comp. adj., *farther.*
ultio, ōnis, f., *vengeance, revenge.*
umbra, ae, f., *shadow.*
unda, ae, f., *wave.*
unde, *whence, wherefore.*
undique, adv., *from all parts or sides.*
ūnicus, a, um, *only, sole.*
ūnus, a, um, *one, alone.*
urbānus, a, um, *of a city, refined.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*
usque, adv., *as far as, up to.*
ūsus, ūs, m., *use, service.*
ūsus mīlitāris, *military experience.*
ut, *that, in order that.*
ūtilis, e, *useful.*
ūtilitās, ātis, f., *advantage.*
utinam, affirmative particle.
ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use.*
uxor, ōris, f., *wife, consort.*

vadum, ī, n., *ford.*
valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *avail, prevail.*
vallis, is, f., *valley.*
vāllum, ī, n., *rampart, intrenchment.*
vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, *lay waste.*
vēna, ae, f., *vein.*
vēndō, ere, vēndidī, vēnditus, *sell.*
Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., *Veneti,* a Gallic tribe.
venia, ae, f., *permission, forgiveness.*
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*
venter, ris, m., *womb.*
ventus, ī, m., *wind.*
verbum, ī, n., *word.*
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear.*
versor, ārī, ātus sum, *be engaged in.*

vertō, ere, vertī, versus, *turn;* **terga vertere,** *flee.*
vērus, a, um, *true, genuine.*
vescor, vescī, ———, *feed, eat.*
vester, tra, trum, *your.*
vestīmentum, ī, n., *garment.*
vetus, veteris, *old.*
vetustās, vetustātis, f., *age.*
vexō, āre, āvī, ātus, *I harass, annoy; ravage.*
via, ae, f., *road, way, street.*
vicissitūdo, inis, f., *change.*
victor, is, m., *victor.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*
videō, ēre, vidī, vīsus, *see.*
videor, ērī, vīsus sum (passive of **videō**), *be seen; seem.*
vigilia, ae, f., *watch* (of the night).
vīgintī, *twenty,* indecl.
vīlitas, ātis, f., *cheapness, baseness.*
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer.*
vindex, icis, m., *avenger, defender.*
vinculum, ī, n., *bond, fetter.*
vir, ī, m., *man.*
virgo, inis, f., *virgin.*
viriditās, ātis, f., *green color, freshness, vigor.*
virīlis, e, *manly,* of a man.
virtūs, tūtis, f., *valor, virtue.*
vīs (**vis**), f., *violence;* pl., **vīrēs, ium,** *strength.*
vīta, ae, f., *life.*
vitium, ī, n., *fault, vice, mistake.*
vītō, *I avoid.*
vituperō, āre, āvī, ātus, *blame.*
vīvō, ere, vixī, victus, *live.*
vīvus, a, um, *alive, living.*
vix, *scarcely, with difficulty.*
vocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call.*
volō, velle, voluī, ———, *be willing, wish, will.*
voluptās, ātis, f., *pleasure, enjoyment.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word.*
vulnus, eris, n., *wound.*
vultur, vulturis, m., *vulture.*
vultus, ūs, m., *expression, look.*

English-Latin Vocabulary

abandon, dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus.
able, be able, possum, posse, potuī.
about, concerning, dē, prep. with abl.
absent, be absent, absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
account, on account of, propter, prep. with acc.
accuse, accūsō, -āre, āvī, -ātus.
across, trāns, prep. with acc.
adjudge, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
admire, admīror, ārī, ātus sum.
advance, prōgredior, ī, gressus sum.
advantage, ūtilitās, ātis, f.
advice, cōnsilium, ī, n.
advise, moneō, ēre, uī, itus.
affair, rēs, reī, f.
after (adv.), post.
after (conj.), postquam.
after, post, prep. with acc.
afterwards, posteā.
against, contra, prep. with acc.
aid, auxilium, ī, n.
alarm, terror, ōris, m.
all, omnis, e.
alliance, societās, ātis, f.
ally, socius, ī, m.
almost, paene.
alone, sōlus, a, um; ūnus, a, um.
already, iam.
also, etiam.
although, though, quamquam; quamvīs; cum.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, ī, m.
ambush, īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl.
ancestors, maiōrēs, um, m.
and, et; -que (enclitic); atque.
anger, īra, ae, f.
animal, animal, ālis, n.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, āvī, ātus.
another, alius, a, ud.

answer, respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum.
answer, respōnsum, ī, n.
any, ūllus, a, um.
anybody, anyone, anything, quisquam, quaequam, quidquam, quis, quid.
any you please, quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet.
appoint, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus; lit., say.
approach, noun, aditus, ūs, m.
approach, verb. appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus; adeō, īre, iī, itus.
approve, probō, āre, āvī, ātus.
April, Aprīlis, e, adj.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, m.
arm, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.
army, exercitus, ūs, m.
army on the march, agmen, minis, m.
arrange, collocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
arrive, perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus.
as long as, dum.
as soon as, simul atque (ac).
ask, rogō, āre, āvī, ātus.
assemble (intransitive), conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.
assistance, subsidium, ī, n.; auxilium, ī, n.
at all, omnīnō, adv.
at hand, be at hand, adsum, esse, adfuī, adfutūrus.
at once, statim.
Athens, Athēnae, ārum, f.
attack, impetus, ūs, m.
attack, adorior, īrī, ortus sum.
attack, assault (a town), oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
attempt, temptō, āre, āvī, ātus.
authority, auctōritās, tātis, f.
auxiliaries, auxilia, ōrum, n. pl.
avoid, vītō, āre, āvī, ātus.

bad, malus, a, um.
band, force (of troops), manus, ūs, f.
barbarian (adj.), barbarus, a, um; (noun), barbarus, ī, m.
battle, proelium, ī, n.
battle line, aciēs, ēī, f.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
be able, possum, posse, potuī.

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
beast, bestia, ae, f.
beast of burden, iūmentum, ī, n.
beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum.
because, quod; quia; cum.
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
before, (prep. and adv.), ante.
before, (conj.), antequam, priusquam.
begin, coepī, coepisse.
beginning, initium, ī, n.
behoove, it behooves, oportet, ēre, oportuit.
Belgians, Belgae, ārum, m.
believe, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditus.
betake oneself, cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, with the reflexive pron.
better, melius.
between, inter, prep. with acc.
black, niger, gra, grum.
blame, culpō, āre, āvī, ātus.
boat, nāvis, is, f.
bold, audax, -ācis.
boldly, audācter, adv.
boldness, audācia, ae, f.
bondage, servitūs, ūtis, f.
booty, praeda, ae, f.
born, be, born, nāscor, ī, nātus sum.
born, nātus, a, um.
both, each, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
boundary, fīnis, is, m.
boy, puer, erī, m.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter; from the adj., fortis, e.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
brief, brevis, e.
bring, afferō, ferre, attulī, allatus.
bring about, efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
bring against, īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, with dat. of indirect obj.
bring back, referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus.
bring together, cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus.
bring up, ēducō, āre, āvī, ātus.
bring upon, īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus.
Britain, Britannia, ae, f.

broad, lātus, a, um.
brother, frāter, tris, m.
building, aedificium, ī, n., building.
burn, accendō, ere, dī, sus.
by (of personal agent), ā ab, prep. with abl.

Caesar, Caesar, is, m.
calamity, calamitās, tātis, f.
call (name), appellō, āre, āvī, atus.
call (summon), vocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
call out, clāmō, āre, āvī, ātus.
call together, convocō, are, āvī, ātus.
camp, castra, ōrum, n.
can (be able), possum, posse, potuī.
captive, captīvus, ī, m.
capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātus.
carry on, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
cause, causa, ae, f.
cavalry, equitēs, um, m. pl. of eques, itis; **of cavalry, equestrian,** equester, tris, tre.
cease, dēsistō, ere, dēstitī.
certain, certain one, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, or quoddam.
change, mūto, āre, āvī, ātus.
charge, be in charge, praesum, esse, fuī, with dative.
charge, put in charge, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, with dat.
check, tardō, āre, āvī, ātus.
chief, prīnceps, cipis, m.
children, liberī, ōrum (um), m.
choose, dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.
circumstance, rēs, eī, f.
citadel, arx, arcis, f.
citizen, fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, m.
city, urbs, urbis, f.
client, cliens, ntis, m.
coast, ōra, ae, f.
cohort, cohors, rtis, f.
collapse, corruō, ere, uī, ———.
collect, colligō, ere, lēgī, lectus.
come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.
command (noun), mandātum, ī, n.

command (verb), imperō, āre, āvī, ātus.
commander, imperātor, ōris, m.
common, commūnis, e.
compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
conceal, celō, āre, āvī, ātus.
concern, it concerns, interest, esse, fuit.
concerning, dē, prep. with abl.
condemn, damnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
confer, colloquor, ī, locūtus sum.
conference, colloquium, i, n.
conflagration, incendium, ī, n.
consider, putō, āre, āvī, ātus.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, ōnis, f.
conspire, coniurō, āre, āvī, ātus.
consul, cōnsul, is, m.
consult (with), dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
contend, dīmicō, āre, āvi, ātus.
contented, contentus, a, um.
conquer, vinco, ere, vīcī, victus.
Corinth, Corinthus, ī, m., a city in Greece.
council, concilium, ī, n.
country, terra, ae, f.
country, native country, patria, ae. f.
courage, animus, ī, m. virtūs, ūtis, f.
courageous, fortis, e.
courageously, audācter, from adj. audāx, acis.
cowardice, ignāvia, ae, f.
cowardly, ignāvus, a, um.
Crassus, Crassus, ī, m.
cross, transēo, īre, iī, itus.
crowd, premō, ere, pressī, pressus.
cry, clāmor, ōris, m.
crown, corōna, ae, f.
cruel, crūdēlis, e.
custom, mōs, mōris, m.

dance, saltō, āre, āvī, ātus.
danger, perīculum, ī, n.
dangerous, perīculōsus, a, um.
dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum, semi-deponent.
daring, audāx, -ācis, adj.

daring, audācia, ae, f.
daughter, fīlia, ae, f.
day, diēs, ēī, m.
death, mors, mortis, f.
decide, cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
decree, dēcernō, ere, crēvī. crētus.
deed, rēs, reī, f.
deep, altus, a, um.
defend, dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus.
defense, dēfensiō, ōnis, f.
delay, moror, ārī, ātus.
delegate, lēgātus, ī, m.
deliberate, dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
delight, dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
demand, flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
depart, excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus.
depth, altitūdō, inis, f.
desert, dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus.
deserter, transfuga, ae, m.
deserve, mereor, ērī, meritus.
desire, dēsiderium, ī, n.,
desire, wish, optō, āre, āvī, ātus.
desirous, cupidus, a, um.
despair, dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātus.
destroy, dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus.
destruction, perniciēs, ēī, f.
difficult, difficilis, e.
with difficulty, vix.
dignity, dignitās, ātis, f.
disagreement, dissensiō, ōnis, f.
disaster, calamitās, tātis, f.
discover, reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
disease, morbus, ī, m.
disgrace, ignōminia, ae, f.
disgust, it disgusts, piget, pigēre, piguit.
dismiss, dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
dispatch, praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
distant, be distant, absum, esse, āfuī, ātutūrus.
disturb, perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus.
ditch, fossa, ae, f.
do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

doubt, be in doubt, dubitō, are, āvī, ātus.
draw up, īnstruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus.
drive back, repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus.
drive out, expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus.
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, īgis, m.
dust, pulvis, pulveris, m.
duty, officium, ī, n.

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.
each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
each other, suī, sibi, sē; also nōs, vōs, used reflexively.
eager, alacer, alacris, alacre.
eagle, aquila, ae, f.
ear, auris, is, f.
easily, facile, from adj. facilis, e.
easy, facilis, e.
Ebro, Hibērus, ī, m., a river in Spain.
eighteen, duodēvīginti.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
elect, creō, āre, āvī, ātus.
eloquence, ēloquentia, ae, f.
else, alius, a, ud.
embankment, rampart, agger, eris, m.
embarrass, turbō, āre, āvī, ātus.
embassy, lēgātiō, ōnis, f.
encourage, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
endeavor, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, dep.
endure, perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
enemy (in military sense), hostis, is, m; (collectively), hostēs, ium, m.
enemy (personal), inimīcus, ī, m.
(be) engaged (in), versor, ārī, ātus.
enjoy, fruor, ī, fructus.
enough, satis.
entreat, implōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
envoy, lēgātus, ī, m.
envy, invidia, ae, f.
equal, par. Gen. paris.
especially, maximē, adv.
establish, cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātus.
Europe, Eurōpa, ae, f.
even, etiam.
ever, always, semper.

every, omnis, e.
evident (it is), cōnstat, stāre, stitit.
examine, explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
exchange, inter sē, dare.
excuse, ignoscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus.
execute, fungor, ī, functus.
exhaust, wear out, cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
expect, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
extent, magnitūdo, inis, f.
extravagance, luxūria, ae, f.

faction, factiō, ōnis, f.
family (stock), genus, eris, n.
farmer, agricola, ae, m.
father, pater, patris, m.
fatherland, patria, ae, f.
favor (thanks), grātia, ae, f.
favor, beneficium, ī, n.
fear (noun), timor, ōris, m.
fear (verb), timeō, ēre, uī.
fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, m.
fertile, ferāx, ācis.
few, paucī, ae, a.
fidelity, fidēs, eī, f.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fiercely, ācriter; from the adj., ācer, ācris, ācre.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fight, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
fill up, compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus.
find (by searching), reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
find (come upon), inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus.
first, adj., prīmus, a, um.
first, adv., primum.
fit out, equip, īnstruō, ere, uxī, ūctus.
fitting (it is), decet.
five, quīnque.
flattery, assentātiō, ōnis, f.
flee, flee from, fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
fleet, classis, is, f.
flight, fuga, ae, f.
flourish, flōreō, ēre, uī, ———.

flower, flos, flōris, m.
follow, sequor, ī, secūtus.
(following), on the following day, postrīdie.
fond, fond of, cupidus, a, um.
foolish, stultus, a, um.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
forage, pābulum, ī, n.
force, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
ford, vadum, ī, n.
forest, silva, ae, f.
forget, oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum.
(to) form a plan, consilium inīre.
form an alliance, foedus iungō, ere, iunxī, iunctum.
fortification, mūnītiō, ōnis, f.
fortify, mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus.
fortune, fortūna, ae, f.
fortune (i.e., property), fortūnae, ārum, f.
founder, conditor, ōris, m.
four, quattuor.
free (adjective), liber, a, um.
free, set free, līberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
frequently, crēbrē, adv.
friend, amīcus, ī, m.
friendship, amīcitia, ae, f.
frighten, perterreō, ēre, uī, itus.
from, ā, ab.
from, out of, ē, ex.
from (=of), with verbs of demanding, etc., ā, ab.
from, after verbs of hindering, etc., quōminus, nē.
front (adj.), prīmus, a, um.
fury, furor, ōris, m.

Galba, Galba, ae, m.
Gallic, Gallus, a, um.
game, ludus, ī, m.
garden, hortus, ī, m.
garrison, praesidium, ī, n.
gate, porta, ae, f.
Gaul (a Gaul), Gallus, ī, m.
Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, f.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.

Geneva, Genava, ae, f.
gentle, clēmens, ntis.
German (a German), Germānus, ī, m.
Germany, Germānia, ae, f.
general, imperātor, ōris, m.
Germans, Germānī, ōrum, m. pl.
get ready (trans.), parō, āre, āvī, ātus.
gift, dōnum, ī, n.
girl, puella, ae. f.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
give up, dēdō, ere, dēdidī, itus.
glad, laetus, a, um.
glorious, amplus, a, um.
glory, glōria, ae, f.
go, eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum.
go around, circumeō, īre, īvī (iī), itus.
go away, abeō, iī, itūrus.
go back, remigrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
gold, aurum, ī, n.
good, bonus, a, um.
grain, frūmentum, ī, n.
grandfather, avus, ī, m.
great, magnus, a, um.
greatest (of qualities), summus, a, um.
greatly, magnopere.
grief, dolor, ōris, m.
(ground), on the ground that.
guard, cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f.
guard, watch, tueor, ēri.

Haedui, Haeduī, ōrum, m.
hand over, trādō, ere, didī, ditus.
happen, be done, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
happen, it happens, it befalls, impersonal, accidit, ere, accidit.
happy, beātus, a, um.
harass, vexō, āre, āvī, ātus.
harbor, portus, ūs, m.
harm, dētrīmentum, ī, n.
harvest, messis, is, f.
hasten, properō, āre, āvī, ātus.
hate, ōdī, ōdisse.

have, habeō, ēre, uī, itus.
he, is (ea, id).
head, caput, itis, n.
hear, hear of, audiō, īre, īvī, ītus.
heart, courage, animus, ī, m.
help, auxilium, ī, n.
Helvetii, Helvētiī, ōrum, m.
her, suus, a, um, reflexive.
herald, praeco, ōnis, m.
here, hīc.
hide, be hidden, lateō, ēre, uī, ———.
high, altus, a, um.
highest (of qualities), summus, a, um.
hill, collis, is, m.
himself, herself, etc., suī, sibi, sē, reflexive.
hinder, impede, impediō, īre, īvī, ītus.
his, suus, a, um, reflexive.
hither, huc, adv.
hold, habeō, ēre, uī, itus.
(home), at home, domī.
home (to one's home), domum.
honor, honōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
honor, honor, ōris, m.
hope, spēs, eī, f.
horn, cornū, ūs, n.
horse, equus, ī, m.
horseman, eques, itis, m.
hostage, obses, idis, m.
house, domus, ūs, f.
how many, quot, indecl.
how much, followed by genitive of the whole, quantum.
humble, humilis, e.
hundred, centum.
hurl, coniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus.
hurry, contendō, ere, tendī, tentum.

I, ego, meī.
if, sī, conj.
immortal, immortālis, e
impede, impediō, īre, īvī, ītus.
implore, ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

in, in, prep. with abl.
in no way, omnīnō, adv.
in vain, frustrā, adv.
inasmuch as, quoniam.
increase (trans.), augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus.
infantry, peditēs, um, m.
inferior, īnferior, ius, comp. adj.
inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
inhabit, incolō, ere, uī, cultus.
inhabitant, incola, ae, m.
injure, noceō, ere, uī, itūrus, with the dative.
injury, iniūria, ae, f.
insult, contumēlia, ae, f.
into, in, prep. with acc.
Ireland, Hibernia, ae, f.
island, īnsula, ae, f.
Italy, Italia, ae, f.

javelin, tēlum, ī, n.
join (battle), (proelium) committō, ere, mīsī, missus.
just, iustus, a, um.
justice, iustitia, ae, f.

Kalends, Kalendae, ārum, f. pl.
keenness, acūmen, inis, n.
keep (silence), (silentium) habeō, ēre, uī, itus.
keep away, ward off, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
kill, nēcō, āre, āvī, ātus.
kill, interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
kind, genus, generis, n.
kind (be), indulgeō, ēre, indulsī, indultus.
king, rēx, regis, m.
kingdom, rēgnum, ī, n.
know, sciō, īre, īvī, ītus.

labor, labor, ōris, m.
lack, be lacking, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī.
land, ager, agrī, m.
land (opposed to water), terra, ae, f.
large, magnus, a, um.
last, last part of, limiting a noun, extrēmus, a, um.
law, statute, lēx, lēgis, f.

lay waste, vastō, āre, āvī, ātus.
lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead across, trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead back, redūcō, ere, xī, ctus.
lead, lead out, lead away, dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
leader, dux, ducis, m.
learn, cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus.
leave (behind), relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus.
legion, legiō, ōnis, f.
lend (help), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
less, minus.
lest, nē.
let go, dīmittō, ere, mīsī, mīssus.
letter, litterae, ārum, f.
liberty, lībertās, ātis, f.
lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, m.
life, vīta, ae, f.
light-armed, expedītus, a, um.
like, see **love.**
like, similis, e.
line of battle, aciēs, ēī, f.
listen to, audiō, īre, īvī, ītus.
literature, litterae, ārum, f. pl.
little (a little), paulum.
long (adv.), diū.
long for, dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātus.
long (adj.), longus, a, um.
loss, dētrīmentum, ī, n.
love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.
lowest, īnfimus, a um, or īmus, a, um, superl. of īnferus.
loyalty, fidēs, ei, f.

make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
make (in sense of, make somebody or something safe, bold, clear, de.), reddō, ere, redidī, redditus.
man, homo, inis, m., the general term for mankind; vir, virī, m., man as opposed to woman, or as a complimentary term.
many, multī, ae, a; **very many,** complūrēs, a; gen. complurium.
march (noun), iter, itineris, n.
march (verb), iter facere, lit., make a march.
march forth, ēgredior, ī, gressus sum.

market-place, forum, ī, n.
messenger, nūntius, ī, m.
middle, medius, a, um.
mile, mille passūs, lit., thousand paces; pl., mīlia passuum.
military experience, ūsus mīlitāris, usūs mīlitāris, f.
mind, animus, ī, m.
mitigate, lēniō, īre, īvī, or iī, ītus.
money, pecūnia, ae, f.
moon, luna, ae, f.
more (adv.), magis.
more (substantive), plūs, plūris, n.
most, plērīque, aeque, aque.
mother, māter, tris, f.
mound, agger, eris, m.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, migrō, āre, āvī, ātus (intransitive).
move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus (intransitive).
much, multus, a, um.
muse, mūsa, ae, f.
my, meus, a, um.

name, nōmen, īnis, n.
narrow, angustus, a, um.
nation, see **tribe.**
naval, nāvālis, e.
nearest, proximus, a, um, adj., superl. of propior.
necessary, it is necessary, necesse est.
need (be in), egeō, ēre, uī, ———.
need, there is need, opus est (w. ablative).
neglect, neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus.
neither, neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. and pron., **neither** (of two).
never, numquam, adv.
nevertheless, tamen, adv.
next, proximus, a, um.
night, nox, noctis, f.
no, nūllus, a, um.
no one, nēmō, dat., nēminī, acc., nēminem; gen. and abl., wanting. Use nullīus and nullō.
noble, nōbilis, e.
not, nōn, nē.
(not), is not? does not? etc., nōnne.
not even, ne . . . quidem, with the emphatic word between.

not yet, nōndum.
nothing, nihil, indecl.
notice, animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus.
now (at the present time), nunc.
number, numerus, ī, m.

oak, quercus, ūs, f.
obey, pāreō, ēre, uī, ītūrus.
occupy, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.
occur, see become.
of, concerning, dē, prep. with abl.
offer, praebeō, ēre, uī, itus.
often, saepe.
old, vetus, gen., veteris.
on, in, prep. with abl.
on all sides, undique, adv.
one, ūnus, a, um.
one . . . an other, alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter.
onset, impetus, ūs, m.
open, apertus, a, um.
opinion, sententia, ae, f.
opportunity, occāsiō, ōnis, f.
oppose, adversō, āre, avī, ātus.
or, aut. See **either.**
order, levy, imperō, āre, āvī, ātus.
order, command, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus.
other, another, alius, a, ud.
other, the other, alter, a, um.
others, all the others, cēterī, ae, a.
ought, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus; **it behooves,** oportet, ēre, oportuit.
our, our own, noster, tra, trum.
outer, exterior, ius, comp. of exterus.
overcome, superō, āre, āvī, ātus.
owe, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus.

pace (=5 feet), passus, ūs, m.
pained (be), doleō, ēre, uī, itus.
pardon, ignoscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus.
parent, parēns, entis, m. and f.
part, pars, partis, f.
pass (narrow), angustiae, ārum, f. pl.

passage, exitus, ūs, m.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people, populus, ī, m.
perish, intereō, īre, iī, itūrus.
permit, permittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
persuade, persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum.
pile, acervus, ī, m.
pitch (camp), pōnō, ere, posuī, positus.
pity, misericordia, ae, f.
pity, it excites pity, miseret, miserēre, miseruit, impersonal.
place, collocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
place, locus, ī, m.
place in charge, in command over, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, with the dat. of indirect obj.
plain, plānitiēs, ēī, f.
plan, cōnsilium, ī, n.
please, placeō, ēre, uī, placitūrus.
pleasing, grātus, a, um.
plunder, dīripiō, ire, ripuī, reptus.
Pompey, Pompeius, Pompeī, m.
position, locus, ī, m.
power, potestās, ātis, f; the power that is vested in an official.
praetor, praetor, ōris, m.
praise, laudō, āre, āvī, ātus.
pray, ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī.
prepare, parō, āre, āvī, ātus.
present, give, dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
present, be present, adsum, esse, fūi, futūrus.
preserve, cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus.
pretty, pulcher, ra, rum.
prevail, valeō, ēre, valuī, itūrus.
prevent, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
private, prīvātus, a, um.
proceed, procēdō, ere, cessī, cessum.
procure, nancīscor, ī, nactus.
prodigy, prodigium, ī, n.
promoter, adiūtrix, īcis, f.
proud, superbus, a, um.
province, prōvincia, ae, f.
public, pūblicus, a, um.

put in charge, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
put to flight, fugō, āre, āvī, ātus.

queen, rēgīna, ae, f.
quickly, celeriter, adv., from the adj., celer, eris, ere.

race (people), genus, eris, n.
rampart, agger, eris, m.
ravage, vexō, āre, āvī, ātus.
reason, causa, ae, f.
receive, accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.
recollection, memoria, ae, f.
reconcile, placō, āre, āvī, ātus.
refuse, recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus.
region, regiō, ōnis, f.
regret, it causes regret, paenitet, ēre, uit, impersonal.
rejoice, gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus.
remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, a, um.
remember, bear in mind, meminī, isse.
remind, admoneō, ēre, uī, itus.
reply, respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus.
report (noun), fāma, ae, f.
report (verb), nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
reputation, fāma, ae, f.
request, seek, petō, ere, petīvī (iī), ītus.
resist, resistō, ere, restitī, with dative.
resources, opēs, um, f. pl.
rest, the rest, cēterī, ae, a.
restore, restituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
retard, tardō, āre, āvī, ūtus.
return (intrans.), revertor, ī; redeō, īre, iī, itum.
revolt, sēditio, ōnis, f.
reward, praemium, ī, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, m.
riches, opēs, ium, f. pl.
right, dexter, tra, trum.
river, flūmen, inis, n. fluvius, ī, m.
road, via, ae, f.
robber, latrō, ōnis, m.
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um; a Roman, Rōmānus, ī, m.

Rome, Rōma, ae, f.
rose, rōsa, ae, f.
rough, asper, era, erum.
rouse, sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
rouse, accendō, ere, accendī, accensum.
rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
rule, regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus.
ruler, see **king.**
run forward, prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum.
rush forth, se ēicere.

safety, salūs, ūtis, f.
sailor, nauta, ae, m.
sake, for the sake, causā, with gen., the genitive always precedes.
same, īdem, eadem, idem, **at the same time,** simul.
save, servō, āre, āvī, ātus.
say, dicō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
scarcely, vix.
scout, explōrātor, ōris, m.
sea, mare, is, n.
seat, sedīle, is, n.
secret, secrētum, ī, n.
see, videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus.
seek, petō, ere, petīvī, petītus.
seize, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
seize, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
seize, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.
select, dēligō, ere, lēgī, lectum.
self (i.e., I myself, you yourself, etc.), ipse, in apposition with the subject or object.
self, oneself, suī, sibi, sē.
sell, vēndō, ere, vēndidī, vēnditus.
senate, senātus, ūs, m.
send, mittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
seem, videor, ērī, vīsus sum.
Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, m.
servant, servus, ī, m.
service, ūsus, ūs, m.
set on fire, incendō, ere, cendī, census.
set out, proficīscor, ī, fectus sum.

set sail, navēs solvō, etc.
she, eā, f. of is.
shield, scūtum, ī, n.
ship, nāvis, is, f.
shore, lītus, oris, n.
short, brevis, -e.
show, mōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
sick, aeger, gra, grum.
(from all) sides, undique, adv.
(sides) on all, undique.
silence, silentium, ī, n.
since (causal), cum.
sister, soror, ōris, f.
six, sex, indecl.
sky, caelum, ī, n.
slave, servus, ī, m.
small, parvus, a, um.
so great, tantus, a, um.
so many, tot, indecl.
so (of degree), tam.
so, thus (of manner), ita, sīc.
soldier, mīles, itis, m.
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.
some, something, aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod.
son, fīlius, ī, m.
soon, mox, adv.
soul, animus, ī, m.
sound, sonitus, ūs, m.
Spain, Hispānia, ae, f.
spare, parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus.
speak, loquor, ī, locūtus sum; dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
spear, hasta, ae, f.
speedily, celeriter, adv.
standard, signum, ī, n.
star, stella, ae, f.
state, cīvitās, ātis, f.
station, collocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
steadfast, firmus, a, um.
storm, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
storm, tempestās, ātis, f.
stone, lapis, idis, m.

story, fābula, ae, f.
strong, fortis, e.
such, tālis, e.
sudden, repentīnus, a, um.
suddenly, subitō.
suffer, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
suffer, patior, ī, passus sum.
suitable, aptus, a, um.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
summer, aestās, ātis, f.
summon, vocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
(superior), be superior to, superō, āre, āvī, ātus.
surely, certe, adv.
surpass, superō, āre, āvī, ātus.
surrender, dēditiō, -ōnis, f.
surrender (oneself), dēdō, ere, dedidī, dēditus.
surround, circumveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus.
suspicion, suspīciō, ōnis, f.
sustain, sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
swift, celer, eris, ere.
sword, gladius, ī, m.

take, seize, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
take by storm, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
take care, cūrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
take oath, iurō, āre, āvī, ātus.
talent, talentum, ī, n.
talk, loquor, ī, locūtus sum.
talkative, loquax, ācis.
tall, altus, a, um.
tarry, moror, ārī, ātus sum.
teach, doceō, ēre, uī, doctus.
tell, say, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
temple, templum, ī, n.
ten, decem, indecl.
terrify, perterreō, ēre, uī, territus.
terror, terror, ōris, m.
than, quam, conj.
thanks, grātia, ae, f.
that, is, ea, id, ille, illa, illud.
that of yours, iste, ista, istud.

that, rel. pron., quī, quae, quod.

that, in order that, ut; quī, quae, quod with the subj.; with comp., quō.

that, on the ground that, quod.

that, lest, with verbs of fearing, nē.

that not, in order that not, nē.

that not, with verbs of fearing, ut.

that (of result), ut, **that not,** ut nōn.

their, their own, suus, a, um.

there, ibi, adv.

therefore, igitur.

they, see **he, she,** etc.

thing, rēs, reī, f.

think, cogitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

third, tertius, a, um.

thirty-eight, duodēquadrāgintā.

this, hīc, haec, hōc.

those, as antecedent of rel., eī, eae, ea.

thou, tū, tuī.

though, quamquam, quamvīs, etsī, cum.

thousand, mīlle, pl., mīlia, ium, n.

three, trēs, tria.

three hundred, trecentī, ae, a.

thus, sīc.

till, dum, dōnec, conj.

time, tempus, oris, n.

to, ad, prep. with acc.

today, hodiē, adv.

(**top**) **top of,** with a noun, summus, a, um.

torture, supplicium, ī, n.

touch, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.

tower, turris, is, f.

town, oppidum, ī, n.

townsman, oppidānus, ī, m.

transport, trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātus.

tree, arbor, oris, f.

trench, fossa, ae, f.

tribe, gēns, gentis, f.

tribune, tribūnus, ī, m.

troops, cōpiae, ārum, f.

true, vērus, a, um.

trust, cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep.
try, make trial, temptō, āre, āvī, ātus.
twenty, vīgintī.
twenty-two, duo et vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.

uncertain, incertus, a, um.
under, sub., prep, with acc.
unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.
unharmed, incolumis, e.
unmindful (be), oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum.
until, dum, dōnec, quoad.
unwilling, invītus, a, um; **be unwilling,** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
uprising, tumultus, ūs, m.
urge on, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
us, nōs, nostrum, nostrī, pl. of ego.
use, ūtor, ī, ūsus sum.

valley, vallis, is f.
valor, virtūs, tūtis, f.
valuable, pretiōsus, a, um.
Veneti, Venetī, ōrum, m.
very many, complūrēs, a; gen., complūrium.
victory, victōria, ae, f.
village, vīcus, ī, m.
virtue, virtūs, ūtis, f.
visit, adeō, īre, iī, itus.
voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
wait, wait for, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
wall, mūrus, ī, m.
war, bellum, ī, n.
watch, vigilia, ae, f.
we, nōs, nostrum or nostrī.
weapons, arma, ōrum, n. pl.
weeping, lacrimae, ārum, f. pl.
welcome, grātus, a, um.
well, bene, adv.
what? quis (quī), quae, quid, (quod).
whatever, quisquis, quidquid.

when? quandō.
when, rel., ubi, ut, cum.
where, ubi.
whether, num, -ne.
whither, quō.
while, conj., dum.
who? quis.
who, which, rel. pron., quī, quae, quod.
whole, tōtus, a, um.
why, quārē, adv.
wife, uxor, ōris, f.
willingly, libenter, adv.
wing, cornū, ūs, n.
winter quarters, hīberna, ōrum, n.
wise, sapiens, entis.
wish, volō, velle, voluī.
with, cum, prep. with abl.
withdraw, discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus.
without, sine, prep. with abl.
withstand, sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
woman, fēmina, ae, f.
wonderful, mīrus, a, um.
woods, silva, ae, f.
word, verbum, ī, n.
work, labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
work (a work), opus, eris, n.
worthy, dignus, a, um.
wound (noun), vulnus, eris, n.
wound (verb), vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus.
wreath, corōna, ae, f.
wretched, miser, a, um.
write, scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.

year, annus, ī, m.
(yet), not yet, nōndum.
yield, cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum.
you, tū, tuī, sing., vōs, vestrum or vestrī, pl.
young man, adulēscēns, entis, m.
your, your own, tuus, a, um., vester, tra, trum.

14080
PA
2087
D45
Deferrari
A First Latin
Book
PA 2087 D45 Deferrari
14080
0003702$